This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 07592189 4

WEEKLY FEB 15 19

Scott
RIP

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORED)

Lake Classical Series

A FIRST LATIN BOOK

FOR

JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

BY

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT, A.M.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO HIGH SCHOOL

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

CHICAGO NEW YORK

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
829004
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R 1919 L

COPYRIGHT 1918
BY
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

PREFACE

The development of the Junior High School has brought about a need for certain changes in the organization and methods of presentation of the subject matter of the high school course. Simpler forms of statement, more extended drill, and the elimination or postponement of some topics which have been included in the elementary work of the four year high school are necessary in order to meet the needs of younger pupils. Such changes are especially important in the study of foreign languages because of the fact that less time has been given for training in English and for gaining familiarity with the general principles of grammatical usage.

In the case of a great many pupils Latin is the first foreign language to be studied. It should, therefore, be made as fully as possible an introduction to the general laws of language. Furthermore it should be presented in such a way as to reēnforce the pupil's knowledge of the essential facts regarding the structure and grammatical usages of his own language. Often the inflections of the Latin sentence elements serve to make clear syntactical relations which have been vague to the pupil in his study of English and which must be understood by him before an intelligent use of his own language or of a foreign language is possible.

In order to adapt the work in Elementary Latin to the interests and abilities of Junior High School pupils special attention has been given to the following points in the preparation of the lessons of this book:

I. Prominence is given to the study of English derivatives from Latin. A few derived or related English words are given after each lesson vocabulary, and these are grouped in review lessons at regular intervals throughout the book.

These lists are by no means intended to include all derivatives from the vocabularies which they follow, but they will serve as a basis for such study as the teacher may think best. In the Appendix, pages 263-267, a list of English word-endings derived from Latin is given, together with a list of Latin prepositions which are used as English prefixes.

II. The vocabulary has been chosen with reference to English derivatives. The words employed in the lessons have been selected primarily with reference to their use as a basis for the study of English derived words. The vocabulary prepared by Max Radin of the Newtown High School, New York City, published in the Classical Journal of December, 1915, and the lists of Latin words given in Meiklejohn's volume The English Language have been drawn upon in the preparation of the vocabulary. Words which do not yield derivatives are sometimes introduced for the purpose of illustrating particular grammatical points or of providing material for exercises. No effort has been made to select words with reference to any one Latin author.

III. A definite presentation of the principles of English grammar is made. An introductory lesson gives such definitions as are necessary for the understanding of the terms used in beginning the study of a foreign language. Other principles which are introduced later are developed from the point of view of an elementary presentation. Such topics as the indirect object, apposition, the classification of conjunctions, the passive voice, and some others, are given with sufficient fulness to meet the needs of pupils who have only a slight knowledge of English grammar.

IV. Grammatical principles are given in brief and simple form. The endeavor has been to present the essential facts in such a way that they might be grasped readily rather than to make definitions which would be logically complete from every point of view. The Introductory Lesson, for example, does not aim to present the principles of grammar in the

form which would be appropriate for mature students. Its purpose is to give the fundamental facts with regard to the application of any grammatical term, leaving to a later time the formulation of a statement which would be universally applicable.

V. The lesson vocabularies are small. The number of new words in a lesson is usually seven, never more than eight. A few words thoroughly learned each day will contribute more to the pupil's mastery of the subject than a large number of words used but not fixed in memory.

VI. A brief introduction to the history of the modern languages which are derived from Latin and Greek is given. The study of a few elementary facts regarding the development of languages may serve to arouse in the pupil an interest which will prove helpful in his later reading. It may also serve to prevent the development of certain misconceptions with reference to the relation of languages.

VII. A number of paradigms and grammatical topics commonly given in the work of the first year are omitted. Among them are the dative of purpose, the dative of possession, the genitive with verbs, the ablative of comparison, the present passive imperative, the future imperative, the declension of *iste*, *quisquam*, and *vetus*, the conjugation of *nolo* and *malo*, the supine, the gerundive, and all forms and uses of the subjunctive mood. These topics and forms will be given in a Junior High School Second Latin Book. Since a relatively small number of topics is presented, it is possible to concentrate attention upon those which are given in such a manner as to insure their more thorough mastery than when the pupil's attention is directed to a larger amount of subject matter.

VIII. The lessons are short, and can usually be covered in single recitations. Naturally, no such plan can be made to meet the conditions of every class, and the teacher may sometimes find it necessary to omit or leave for later review

part of the exercises of a lesson. But it is hoped that the presentation of forms and syntax in small units will tend to prevent confusion in the mind of the pupil and to aid the teacher in planning the work of the class.

IX. In addition to one hundred and five lessons containing exercises or grammatical and descriptive material, twenty review lessons are included. A number of sections of connected text are also given for the purpose of adding variety and interest to the work. These exercises contain a few words which have not appeared in the preceding lessons. Such words are given either at the bottom of the page or in the complete vocabulary.

X. At the end of each lesson a list of questions and suggestions for drill is given. These may be made the basis of written reviews, or such parts of them may be used as the teacher finds best adapted to the needs of a particular class. It is hoped that they may prove suggestive to the young teacher as to the method of drill work.

The character *j* has been used to represent the consonant value of *i* in the spelling of Latin words in order to enable the young pupil to recognize more easily the relation between Latin words and their English derivatives. The origin of such words as *injury, just, conjunction,* and the like is more readily seen by the beginner when the Latin words from which these words are derived are spelled *injuria, justus, conjunctus,* than when the classical spelling is used. Other variations from the classical spelling have been made for the same reason. Among them are *aggredior, appropinquo, expecto.* The uncontracted genitive in *filius* and nouns in *-ium* is given to avoid confusion. The standard of spelling (including the use of *j*) represents in general the prevalent usage in Latin text books in this country and in England until a comparatively recent period. If the pupil should at a later time in his course use text books which employ a slightly different spelling he will have little difficulty in

becoming accustomed to the forms which are used. Our Latin text books have never at any time been uniform in spelling, and it seems preferable in such a book as this to adopt the standard which will give the greatest value to the large number of those who are unable to continue the study for more than a few years.

The author wishes to make acknowledgment of valuable suggestions from Miss Ada Townsend of Northwestern University, Mr. W. L. Carr of the University High School of Chicago, and Professor Frederick W. Sanford of the University of Nebraska, by whom the manuscript has been read. Mr. Carr and Professor Sanford have also read the proofs. Miss Frances Sabin of the University High School of Wisconsin has made very helpful suggestions with regard to the form and material of the early lessons.

A number of pictures which appear in the book represent objects in the classical collection of the Metropolitan Museum of Art of New York.

CONTENTS

PAGE

List of Illustrations xv

Pronunciation xvii

Elementary Principles of Grammar xxiii

Lesson I. Sources of the English Vocabulary: Importance of Latin in English: Forms of English Derivatives from Latin 1

II. Modern Forms of Latin and Greek 4

III. Forms of Nouns and Pronouns: the Latin Cases . . 8

IV. The Indirect Object: the Dative: the Ablative with Prepositions 11

V. Declension of **rosa**: the Article 13

VI. Case Endings: Prepositions with the Ablative . . 15

VII. Conjugation: Present Indicative Active of **portō**: Personal Endings 17

VIII. The Four Conjugations: the Present Stem 20

First Review Lesson 22

IX. Gender of Nouns: Gender in the First Declension: Declension of **templum**. 24

X. Declension of **dominus, ager, puer**: Case Endings of the Second Declension: Classes of **-er** Nouns. . . 26

XI. Verbs with the Subject Expressed: Position of the Verb: Position of the Genitive 28

XII. Declension of **vir**: Position of the Dative 30

XIII. Predicate Adjectives: Predicate Nouns 32

XIV. Conjugation of **sum** in the Present Indicative . . . 34

XV. Agreement of Adjectives: Declension of **bonus** . . . 35

Second Review Lesson 37

XVI. Predicate and Adherent Adjectives: Position of Adjectives 38

XVII. Declension of **miser** and **pulcher**: the Expletive *there* 40

PAGE

XVIII. Possessive Adjectives: Use of **tuus** and **vester**: Masculine Nouns of the First Declension 44

XIX. Apposition: Case of Appositives: Conjunctions . . . 46

XX. Demonstratives: Declension of **hic**: Position of Demonstratives 48

Third Review Lesson 50

XXI. The Progressive Form of the Verb in English: the Passive Voice: Present Passive of **portō** 51

XXII. Ablative of Accompaniment: Ablative of Agent. . . 53

XXIII. Declension of **ille**: Declension of **ipse** 55

XXIV. Place from Which: Use of **ab** and **ex**: Additional Prepositions with the Ablative 57

XXV. The Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active and Passive of **moneō** 60

Fourth Review Lesson 62

XXVI. Declension and Use of **is** 63

XXVII. Accusative with Prepositions: Place to Which . . . 65

XXVIII. Tense in the Indicative: the Imperfect: the Imperfect Indicative Active of **portō** and **moneō** . . . 66

XXIX. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives 69

XXX. The Imperfect Indicative Passive of **portō** and **moneō**: the Imperfect of **sum** 71

Fifth Review Lesson 74

XXXI. Possessives of the Third Person: Omission of Possessives 75

XXXII. The Future Indicative Active of the First and Second Conjugations 77

XXXIII. The Future Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations: the Future Indicative of **sum** . 79

XXXIV. The Perfect Indicative Active 81

XXXV. The Perfect Stem: Distinction between the Imperfect and the Perfect 83

Sixth Review Lesson 86

XXXVI. The Past Participle: Agreement of the Participle . 87

PAGE

XXXVII. Principal Parts of the Verb: The Stems of the Verb 90

XXXVIII. The Past Perfect Indicative Active: Accusative of Duration 92

XXXIX. The Future Perfect Indicative Active: Substantive Use of Adjectives 94

XL. The Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect of **sum**: Word Order 97

Seventh Review Lesson 99

XLI. The Perfect Indicative Passive 101

XLII. The Past Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative Passive 103

XLIII. The Synopsis of Verbs in the Indicative 105

XLIV. The Future Active Participle 106

XLV. The Third Conjugation, ō Verbs: the Present Indicative, Active and Passive, of **dūcō** 108

Eighth Review Lesson 110

XLVI. The Fourth Conjugation: the Present Indicative, Active and Passive, of **audiō** 111

XLVII. Ablative of Means 113

XLVIII. The Imperfect of **dūcō** and **audiō**: the Enclitic **-que** 115

XLIX. The Future of **dūcō** and **audiō** 117

L. The Declension of **īdem** 119

Ninth Review Lesson 121

LI. Third Conjugation Verbs in **-iō** 122

LII. Review of Verbs in the Present System, Indicative Mood 124

LIII. Review of Verbs in the Perfect System, Indicative Mood 128

LIV. Third Declension of Nouns: Declension of Nouns with Genitive Plural in **-um**, Masculine and Feminine 130

LV. Declension of Neuter Nouns with Genitive Plural in **-um** 133

Tenth Review Lesson 135

PAGE

LVI. Declension of Nouns with Genitive Plural in **-ium**, Masculine and Feminine 137

LVII. Declension of Neuter Nouns with Genitive Plural in **-ium** 139

LVIII. Declension of **vīs**: Gender in the Third Declension 141

LIX. Present Infinitives Active and Passive: Construction with **jubeo** 143

LX. Adjectives of the Third Declension with Three Endings 145

Eleventh Review Lesson 147

LXI. Adjectives of the Third Declension with Two Endings: the Complementary Infinitive 148

LXII. Adjectives of the Third Declension with One Ending 150

LXIII. Ablative of Time: Genitive of the Whole 151

LXIV. Declension of Personal Pronouns 153

LXV. Reflexive Pronouns: Enclitic Use of **cum** 156

Twelfth Review Lesson: Reading Exercise, **Epistula Puerī** . . . 158

LXVI. The Fourth Declension of Nouns 159

LXVII. Ablative of Respect: Accusative of Extent of Space. 161

LXVIII. Relative Pronoun: Agreement of the Relative . . 163

LXIX. Regular Comparison of Adjectives: Declension of Comparatives 165

LXX. Comparison of Adjectives in **-er**: Ablative of Degree of Difference 168

Thirteenth Review Lesson: Reading Exercise, **Vir Clārus et Rēgīna Sapiēns** 170

LXXI. Comparison of Five Adjectives in **-lis**: Translation of the Superlative with "Very" 172

LXXII. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives: Declension of **plūs** 174

LXXIII. Declension of Adjectives with Genitive in **-īus** . . . 175

LXXIV. Genitive and Ablative of Description 177

LXXV. Formation of Adverbs 179

Fourteenth Review Lesson: Reading Exercise, **Epistula Puellae** 182

PAGE

LXXVI. Comparison of Adverbs 184
LXXVII. Comparison of Adverbs (continued) 185
LXXVIII. The Present Participle 187
LXXIX. Ablative Absolute 190
LXXX. The Fifth Declension of Nouns: Synonyms 193

Fifteenth Review Lesson: Reading Exercise, **Urbs Nostra** . . . 196

LXXXI. Deponent Verbs of the First and Second Conjugations 197
LXXXII. Deponent Verbs of the Third and Fourth Conjugations: Ablative with **ūtor**, etc. 199
LXXXIII. Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation in **-ior**: Participles of Deponent Verbs 202
LXXXIV. Infinitive of the Four Conjugations 205
LXXXV. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative: Indirect Discourse 207

Sixteenth Review Lesson: Reading Exercise, **Barbarī et Patrēs Nostrī** 209

LXXXVI. The Tense of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse . 212
LXXXVII. The Present System of **possum** 214
LXXXVIII. The Present System of **eō** 216
LXXXIX. The Perfect System of **possum** and **eō** 218
XC. Declension of **quīdam** 220

Seventeenth Review Lesson: Reading Exercise, **Pictūra**. . . . 222

XCI. Dative with Special Verbs 223
XCII. Declension of **quisque**: the Defective Verb **coepī** . . 224
XCIII. The Vocative Case: Position of the Vocative. . . . 226
XCIV. The Imperative 228
XCV. Ablative of Separation: the Dative with Compounds 230

Eighteenth Review Lesson: Reading Exercise, **Tempestās** . . . 232

XCVI. Semi-Deponents: Ablative of Cause 234
XCVII. Conjugation of **ferō** 236
XCVIII. Declension of **aliquis**: Ablative of Manner. 238
XCIX. Cardinal Numerals, 1-20: Declension of **duo** and **trēs**. 241

PAGE

C. Cardinal Numerals, 21-100: the Predicate Nominative with Certain Passive Verbs 243

Nineteenth Review Lesson: Reading Exercise, **Oppidum in quō Amicus Habitat** 245

CI. Conjugation of **fīō** 246

CII. Ordinal Numerals, 1-20: Questions with **-ne** and **nōnne** 248

CIII. Conjugation of **volō** 250

CIV. Correlatives 252

CV. The Gerund 255

Twentieth Review Lesson: Reading Exercises, **Puer quī Mentīrī Nōn Poterat; Quō Modō Puerī in Bellō Auxilium Tulērunt** 258

APPENDIX

Derivation of Latin Words 260

The Formation of English Words from Latin 263

Familiar Latin Phrases 267

Vocabulary for Oral Exercises 269

Latin-English Vocabulary 303

English-Latin Vocabulary 314

Index 323

ILLUSTRATIONS

PAGE

Frontispiece, The Roman Forum (Restored)
Roman Lamps 7
Miniature Farm Yard Scene 10
Roman Javelins 14
Roman Gems 16
Ruins of Building in Forum 19
Roman Pitcher 21
Wall Painting 23
Roman Mirror 29
Roman Tools 31
Temple at Paestum 33
Roman Sacrifice 39
View of Roman Forum 43
Part of Ancient Amphitheater 49
Roman Wall Painting 59
Wall of Ardea 73
Roman Children at Play 79
Roman Table 85
Festival Procession 100
Pyramid of Cestius 120
Street in Ostia 127
Ancient Glass Bowls 132
Forum of Pompeii 144
Temple at Tivoli 146
Theater of Pompeii 155
Ruins of Coliseum 165
Roman Writing Materials 167
Roman Drinking Cups 173
Image of the Goddess Cybele 181
Arch of Titus 194
Roman Coins 204

PA

Ancient Rome (Reconstruction) 2
View of Misenum 2
Amphitheater of Pompeii 2
Roman Beads 2
Column of Marcus Aurelius 2
Gate in Wall of Rome 2
Roman Buckles 2

INTRODUCTORY LESSON

THE ALPHABET

I. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no **w**.

a. The letter *j* was not introduced until long after the time of the great Roman writers. Its sound was represented by *i*, which was used both as a vowel and as a consonant. But since *j* was used in the spelling of Latin words during the period in which the greater number of the English derivatives from Latin were brought into the English language, and since its use is helpful to beginners in learning the pronunciation of new words, it is retained in this book. The sounds of *u* and *v* were also represented originally by one letter.

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS

II. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y.**[1] The other letters are consonants.

THE ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

III. The vowels in Latin are either long or short. In this book long vowels are indicated by a mark placed above them. A vowel which is unmarked is short. The vowel sounds are indicated in the following table:

ā = *a* in *father*	**a** = *a* in *comma*[2]
ē = *a* in *fade*	**e** = *e* in *net*
ī = *i* in *machine*	**i** = *i* in *this*
ō = *o* in *holy*	**o** = *o* in *domain*
ū = *u* in *rude*	**u** = *u* in *full*

[1] **y** is seldom used. Its sound is the same as that of *u* in the French language or *ü* in German.

[2] Like **ā**, but pronounced more quickly.

IV. The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions are to be noted:

c and **ch** have the sound of *k*.
g has only one sound, that heard in *go*.
j is equivalent to *y* in *yes*.
s has only the sound heard in *say*.
t always has the sound heard in *top*. It does not combine with *i* to give the sound of *sh* as in *nation*.
v has the sound of *w*.
x has only the sound of *ks*, as in *exercise*.
bs and **bt** are equivalent to *ps* and *pt*.
ph and **th** are nearly equivalent to *p* and *t*.

DIPHTHONGS

V. A diphthong is a combination of two vowels in one syllable. The diphthongs are **ae, au, ei, eu, oe,** and **ui.** Their sounds are as follows:

ae = *ai* in *aisle*	**eu** = *eu* in *feud*
au = *ou* in *out*	**oe** = *oi* in *boil*
ei = *ei* in *vein*	**ui** = almost[1] *ui* in *ruin*

SYLLABLES

VI. A syllable is either a group of letters the sounds of which are taken together in pronunciation, or a vowel or diphthong which is taken by itself in pronunciation. The following words are divided into syllables by hyphens: *ac-ci-dent, re-li-a-ble.* A syllable must always have a vowel or a diphthong. The rules for the division of Latin words into syllables are as follows:

(1) A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: **pō-nō, ha-be-ō.**

(2) Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows. But if the second of two consonants is **l** or **r**,

[1] The **u** is shorter than in the English word, and the vowels are more closely blended.

and if the combination can be pronounced at the beginning of a word, as **bl, br,** etc., the two are taken with the vowel which follows, like a single consonant[1]: **man-dā-re, car-dō**; but **fe-bris, ā-cris.**

LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

VII. (1) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **dō-num, cau-tus.**

(2) A syllable is regularly long if its vowel is followed by two consonants: **con-dō, mit-tō.**

a. But if the two consonants consist of a mute[2] followed by **l** or **r** the syllable is short, unless it has a long vowel or a diphthong: **pă-tris.**

(3) All other syllables are short: **me-mor, a-grī.**

a. **x** and **z** have the value of two consonants because they represent a combination of sounds. A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by either of these double consonants.

ACCENT

VIII. In pronouncing a word of two or more syllables we make one of the syllables more prominent than any other. Thus in the word *mem-o-ry* we make the first syllable prominent. This prominence in pronunciation given to a syllable is called Accent. In the word *memory* the accent is said to fall on the first syllable. The accent of Latin words is determined by the following rules:

IX. (1) In a word of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable: **lū'men.**

(2) In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the syllable before the last, if it is long, otherwise on the second syllable from the last: **au-dī're, con-ten'tus, me'mi-nī.**

a. The syllable before the last is called the *penult;* the second from the last is called the *antepenult.*

---

[1] In the division of a compound verb into syllables in writing or printing, the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb: **ad-it.**

[2] The mutes are **b, p, c, k, q, g, d, t, ph, th, ch.**

THE ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION

Latin words and phrases which are frequently used in English and proper names of Latin origin are commonly pronounced in accordance with what is called the English method of pronunciation. This represents in general the pronunciation of English words which are derived from Latin. While some variations are found, the following rules represent the most widely accepted usage.

VOWELS

X. Vowels are either long or short. Their sounds are as follows:

Long	*Short*
ā = *a* in *date*	**a** = *a* in *lap*
ē = *e* in *me*	**e** = *e* in *net*
ī = *i* in *fine*	**i** = *i* in *lid*
ō = *o* in *cone*	**o** = *o* in *lot*
ū = *u* in *pupil*	**u** = *u* in *luck*

a. For a slight variation in the sounds of **a, e, i,** and **u** see section XIV.

NOTE. It is very important to observe that the long marks over the vowels in the exercises of this book and other Latin books do not indicate the long vowel sounds of the English method of pronunciation. They indicate the long sounds of the Roman method of pronunciation, and they are to be entirely disregarded when the English method is used, except for the influence of a long vowel in the penult as determining the accent.

DIPHTHONGS

XI. The diphthongs are **ae, au, ei, eu, oe,** and **ui.** Their sounds are as follows:

ae = *e* in *me* or in *net*	**eu** = *eu* in *feud*
au = *au* in *author*	**oe** = *e* in *me* or in *net*
ei = *i* in *nice*	**ui** = *i* in *nice*

LONG VOWELS

XII. (1) A final vowel is long, with the exception of **a**: **mo-'nē, du'-rī.** For final **a**, see section XIV, 2.

(2) A vowel is long, if followed directly by another vowel or a diphthong[1]: **rē-'us, dī'-es.**

(3) A vowel in an accented penult (IX, 2, *a*) is long, if followed by a single consonant, or by the combination of a mute with **l** or **r**: **ar-mā'-tus, fē'-bris, fī'-nis.**

(4) The vowels **a, e,** and **o** in an accented syllable other than the penult are long when preceding a single consonant, or a mute before **l** or **r**, followed by **e, i,** or **y** before another vowel: **sā'-li-o, vē'-ni-a, hā'-be-o, ā'-cri-a.**

(5) The vowel **u** is long in any syllable except the last, before a single consonant or before a mute with **l** or **r**, except before **bl**: **mū'-ti-lus,** but **pub'-li-co.**

(6) In final **es** and in the plural ending **os** the vowel is long: **mi'-lēs, hor'-tōs.**

(7) In unaccented syllables other than the final syllable a vowel is long before a single consonant or a mute followed by **l** or **r**. The vowel **i**, however, in such syllables, is regularly short: **mā-tū'-ro, hō-no'-ris; Ē-tru'-ri-a,** but **ca'-dĭ-tis.**

SHORT VOWELS

XIII. (1) A vowel in a final syllable ending in a consonant is short, except in final **es** and in the plural ending **os** and in **post: por'-tăt, mo'-nĕt,** but **mi'-lēs, hor'-tōs, pōst.**

(2) A vowel is short in any syllable before **x** or **z** or any two consonants except a mute followed by **l** or **r**: **tĕx'-o, pĕn'-do;** but **pā'-tris.**

(3) A vowel is short when followed by one or more consonants in any accented syllable except the penult: **mĭ'-li-tis, Cĭ'-ce-ro.** (See exceptions in section XII, 4, 5.)

(4) The vowel **u** is short before **bl**: **pŭb'-li-co.**

---

[1] A vowel which is separated from another vowel by **h** is pronounced as it would be if followed directly by a vowel.

NOTE 1. Before **tl** or **gl** any vowel is short: **Ăt′-las.**

NOTE 2. When **i** is preceded by an accented **a, e, o,** or **y,** and followed by another vowel, it has the sound of **y** in *yes:* **Pom-pe′-ius** (*Pom-pe′-yus*).

NOTE 3. In the combination **qu,** and commonly in **gu** and **su** before a vowel, **u** has the sound of **w: que′-ror, sua′-vis.**

NOTE 4. The sounds of **ae** and **oe** are long or short according as **e** in the same position would be long or short. **Caesar,** pronounced *Cē′-sar;* **aestimo,** pronounced *ĕs′-ti-mo;* **coepi,** pronounced *cē′-pi;* **coepimus,** pronounced *cĕp′-i-mus.*

SPECIAL SOUNDS

XIV. (1) Before **r** followed by another consonant **a** is pronounced as in *far:* **ar-mo.**

(2) Unaccented **a** is pronounced like the final *a* in *America:* **ca′-sa.**

(3) Before **r, e** is pronounced as in *miner:* **a′-ger.**

(4) Before **r** in a monosyllable or a final syllable **i** is pronounced as in *bird:* **vir.**

(5) After **r** the sound of long **u** is like that of *oo* in *boot:* **ruber,** pronounced *roo′-ber.*

CONSONANTS

XV. The consonants are in general sounded as in English words. The following special sounds are to be noted.

(1) Before **e, i, y, ae,** and **oe, c** and **g** have the sounds, respectively, of **s** and **j: cedo,** pronounced *se′-do;* **gero,** pronounced *je′-ro.*

(2) Before other vowels and diphthongs and before consonants **c** and **g** have the hard sounds: **cano,** pronounced *ka′-no;* **ecce** pronounced *ek′-se.* But **g** has the soft sound before another **g** which is followed by **e, i,** or **y: ag-ger,** pronounced *aj′-jer.*

(3) **ch** always has the sound of *k:* **charta,** pronounced *kar′ta.*

(4) Final **s** following **e, ae, au, b, m, n, r,** is pronounced **z: miles,** pronounced *mī′-lez,* **urbs,** pronounced *urbz,* **ars,** pronounced *arz.*

(5) Sometimes **s** between vowels is pronounced as **z** because of the influence of the pronunciation of a derived English word: **rosa, causa,** pronounced *ro′-za, cau′-za* from the analogy of the derived English words *rose* and *cause.*

(6) When following an accented syllable, and preceding a vowel, **ci, si,** and **ti** are sounded as *shĭ:* **socius** pronounced *so′-shĭ-us,* **natio,** pronounced *na′-shī-o.*

(7) In like manner, **x** when preceded by an accented syllable and followed by **i** before another vowel, has the sound of *ksh:* **anxius,** pronounced *ank′-shi-us.*

a. But **ti** has the unmodified sound (as in *time*) when following **s, t,** or **x: Os′-ti-a.**

ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR

NOTE: The following presentation of elementary grammatical principles is intended for the use of pupils who have little or no knowledge of English grammar. It is not meant to be a complete summary of the subject, but only to furnish such information as is necessary for the understanding of the terms which are used in beginning the study of a foreign language. It may be omitted with classes which have had sufficient training in English grammar to make such introductory study unnecessary.

THE PARTS OF THE SENTENCE: THE SUBJECT

(1) When we make a statement or ask a question, there is some word which indicates the person or thing about whom or about which we say or ask something. Thus, in the sentences *The boy runs* and *The letter was sent,* we say something about the boy and the letter. In the question *When did the storm begin?* we ask something about the storm. A word which is used in this way in a sentence is said to be the Subject of the sentence. In the sentences given above *boy, letter,* and *storm* are the subjects.

THE PREDICATE

(2) What we say or ask about the subject is called the Predicate. In the sentences which have been given *runs, was sent,* and *did begin* are the predicates.

THE DIRECT OBJECT

(3) Often the subject of a sentence is said to do something which directly affects a person or thing. In the sentence *The man helps his brother* the act which the subject does directly affects the brother. A word which is used to denote a person or thing directly affected by an act is said to be the Direct Object. In the sentence above *brother* is the direct object. In like manner, in the sentences *My father built a house* and *The fire destroyed the city* the words *house* and *city* are direct objects.

(4) Point out the subjects, the predicates, and the direct objects in the following sentences:

1. The heavy storm had injured many trees. 2. My father has read this book. 3. The horses draw a heavy load. 4. Your uncle built a new house. 5. My letter has been sent. 6. Where was the money found? 7. This picture has often been admired. 8. Why did these men leave their homes? 9. Columbus discovered a new continent. 10. These books contain many interesting stories.

PARTS OF SPEECH: THE NOUN

(5) The words *man, brother, house, fire,* and *city* are words which denote persons or things. Such words are called Nouns.

THE VERB

(6) The words *help, built,* and *destroyed* denote acts. Words which are used to denote acts are called Verbs.

a. There are also some verbs which represent the subject merely as being in a place or in a particular situation. Such verbs as *stay, remain, continue, live, be* are of this kind.

THE PRONOUN

(7) In the sentence *The man saw the boy, but did not speak to him,* the word *him* is used instead of *boy.* A word which is used instead of a noun is called a Pronoun. Pronouns, as well as nouns, are used as subjects or as direct objects.

(8) The word instead of which a pronoun is used is called its Antecedent. In the sentence given above *boy* is the antecedent of *him.*

CLASSES OF PRONOUNS

(9) The pronouns *I, you, he, she, it, we,* and *they* are called Personal pronouns. When *who, which,* and *what* are used to introduce questions they are called Interrogative pronouns. When they are used in sentences which are not questions they are called Relative pronouns. Thus, in the sentence *Who gave you the knife? who* is an interrogative pronoun. In the sentence *It was my mother who gave me the knife, who* is a relative pronoun. Sometimes *that* is used instead of *who* or *which.* Thus, *The man that just came in is my uncle.* When so used, *that* is a relative pronoun.

THE ADJECTIVE

(10) We often use some other word with a noun to tell something about the appearance or the character of the person or thing to which the noun refers. Thus, in the expressions *tall trees* and *brave men* the words *tall* and *brave* tell something about the trees and the men. Such words are called adjectives.

a. There are a few adjectives which merely show what person or thing is meant without telling any quality of the person or thing. Such are *this, that, other, same. The, a,* and *an,* also belong in this class.

THE ADVERB

(11) We often use a word with a verb to tell how an action is done. In the sentence *He runs swiftly* the word *swiftly* tells how the act of the verb *runs* is done. Such words are called

Adverbs. Adverbs are also used to tell something about adjectives and even about other adverbs. In the expressions *too small* and *very swiftly* the adverbs *too* and *very* tell something about the adjective *small* and the adverb *swiftly*.

THE PREPOSITION

(12) There is a class of small words such as *of, in, with, by, from,* which are used with nouns or pronouns. The combination of one of these words and the noun or pronoun which is used with it serves to tell something about an act or about a person or thing. These words are called Prepositions. The noun or pronoun which follows a preposition is called its Object, or the preposition is said to govern the noun or pronoun which follows it. In the sentence *I live in the city* the word *city* is the object of *in*.

THE CONJUNCTION

(13) The words *and, but,* and *or* are used to join words or parts of sentences. In the sentence *Your father and mother are not in the city* the word *and* is used to join the words *father* and *mother*. In like manner, in the sentence *The train is late, but it will soon arrive* the word *but* joins the two parts of the sentence *The train is late* and *it will soon arrive*. Such words are called Conjunctions. Conjunctions of a somewhat different kind are *because, although, if,* and some other words. In the sentence *I shall go if I receive the letter* the conjunction *if* is used to join the verb *shall go* and *I receive the letter*.

EXERCISE

(14) Make lists of the words in section (4), putting the nouns in one list, the verbs in another, and in like manner grouping together the other parts of speech. Find five relative pronouns in one of your other books.

GENDER

(15) We use the pronoun *he* when we are referring to a man or boy or a male animal, the pronoun *she* when we are referring

to a woman or girl or a female animal, and the pronoun *it* when we are referring to something without sex. Thus when we are speaking of a boy we may say *He is a stranger*, when speaking of a girl we may say *She is not at home*, and when speaking of a book we may say *It is mine*. This distinction in pronouns is called Gender.

Such words as *he* are in the Masculine gender, such words as *she* are in the Feminine gender, and such words as *it* are in the Neuter gender. Nouns also are said to have gender. Thus, *brother* is masculine, *sister* is feminine, and *house* is neuter.

a. A word like *friend* which may refer to either a man or a woman is sometimes said to be in the Common gender.

NUMBER

(16) We have different forms of pronouns and also of nouns to show whether we are referring to one person or thing or to more than one. Thus *I* refers to one person, *we* refers to more than one. This distinction is called Number. *I* is in the Singular number, and *we* is in the Plural number. In the same way, *book* is in the singular number and *books* is in the plural number.

PERSON

(17) The pronoun *I* and its plural *we* refer to the person or persons speaking, and are said to be in the First Person; *you* refers to the person to whom one is speaking and is said to be in the Second Person, and *he*, *she*, and *it* (plural *they*) refer to a person or thing spoken of, and are said to be in the Third Person. Nouns are ordinarily in the third person.

CASE

(18) Such pronouns as *he*, *she*, and *who* have different forms to show how they are used in sentences. We say *He walks*, *I see him*, and *I have his ball*. In these sentences *he* is subject, *him* is direct object, and *his* refers to a person as possessing something. In like manner we use *she* and *who* as subjects, *her* and *whom* as direct objects of a verb or as objects of a prepo-

sition, and *her* (or *hers*) and *whose* to denote the person possessing something. A noun has the same form for the subject as for the object of a verb or a preposition, but it has a different form to refer to a person as possessing something. Thus we say *The boy walks, I see the boy, I have the boy's ball.* These different forms and uses of nouns and pronouns in sentences are called Cases or case-uses. The subject is in the Nominative case, the object of a verb or preposition is in the Accusative case, and the word referring to the possessor is in the Genitive case.

EXERCISE

(19) Give the gender, person, number, and case of the nouns and pronouns in section (4). Give the antecedent of the pronoun in sentence 8, section (4).

TENSE OF VERBS

(20) When someone says *The boy stands in the street,* we know that the act is going on while we are being told about it; that is, in the present time. If the sentence is *The boy stood in the street,* we know that the act took place at some past time, and similarly the sentence *The boy will stand in the street* shows that the act is going to take place in the future. In these sentences the form of the verb shows what is the time of the act. The forms of a verb which show time are called Tenses. There are six tenses in English. Their names are Present, Past, Future, Present Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect. The following forms of the verb *walk* with the subject *I* show how these tenses are used.

PRESENT	I walk
PAST	I walked
FUTURE	I shall walk
PRESENT PERFECT	I have walked
PAST PERFECT	I had walked
FUTURE PERFECT	I shall have walked

VOICE

(21) The two sentences *The boy helps his friend* and *The boy is helped by his friend* both have the word *boy* as subject, since in each sentence we say something about the boy. But in the first sentence the subject does the act, while in the second the act is done by some one else. A verb which denotes an act done by the subject is said to be in the Active Voice, and a verb which denotes an act which is done to the subject by some other person or thing is said to be in the Passive Voice.

PERSON AND NUMBER OF VERBS

(22) In some tenses a verb has a different form when its subject is in the first person from what it would have if the subject were in the third person. Thus we say *I walk*, but *he walks*. The third person plural also differs from the third person singular. Thus, *he walks, they walk*. A verb is said to be in the same person and number as its subject.

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

(23) A verb which takes a direct object is called a Transitive Verb. In the sentence *I saw the fire*, the verb *saw* is transitive. A verb which does not take a direct object is called an Intransitive Verb. In the sentence *We walked in the park*, the verb *walked* is intransitive.

THE INFINITIVE

(24) A verb form preceded by *to* is often used to refer to an act without saying that it really took place. The expressions *to walk, to have heard, to be seen*, are of this kind. These forms of the verb with *to* are called Infinitives.

EXERCISE

(25) Write two English sentences which contain infinitives.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE WITH THE VERB *TO BE*

(26) The forms *am, is, was, will be, are, were, have been*, and the other forms of the verb *to be* often serve to connect a noun

or an adjective with the subject. A noun or adjective connected with the subject in this way is called a Predicate noun or adjective. *The boy is my brother. The house is large.*

THE CLAUSE

(27) A group of words which has a subject and a predicate is called a Clause. In the sentence *The noise which I heard frightened me* the words *the noise frightened me* contain a subject and a predicate and the words *which I heard* contain another subject and predicate. This sentence therefore has two clauses.

THE PHRASE

(28) A group of related words that does not contain a subject or a predicate is called a Phrase. Thus *in the boat* and *too long* are phrases. A phrase consisting of a preposition and its object is called a Prepositional phrase. *In the boat* is a prepositional phrase.

PRINCIPAL CLAUSE

(29) A clause which makes complete sense when standing alone, and which is not attached to some part of another clause is called a Principal clause. *The noise frightened me* is a principal clause.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

(30) A clause which is attached to some part of another clause by a relative pronoun or by such a word as *if, because, although, when, where,* is called a Subordinate clause. In the sentence *The flowers which you have brought are beautiful* the clause *which you have brought* is attached to the word *flowers* and is used to tell something about the flowers. In the sentence *We stayed in the house because it was raining* the clause *because it was raining* is attached to the verb *stayed,* and gives the reason for the act. The clauses *which you have brought* and *because it was raining* are subordinate clauses.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

(31) A sentence which consists of one principal clause is called a Simple sentence. *The flowers are beautiful* is a simple sentence.

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE

(32) A sentence which consists of one principal clause and one or more subordinate clauses is called a Complex sentence. *The flowers which you have brought are beautiful* is a complex sentence.

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

(33) A sentence which contains two or more principal clauses is called a Compound sentence. *My father is in South America, but he will come home soon,* is a compound sentence. The principal clauses of a compound sentence may also have subordinate clauses attached to them. Thus, *The city in which I live is not beautiful, but I love it because it is my home.*

EXERCISE

(34) Tell which of the following sentences are simple, which are complex, and which are compound.

1. My brother has just arrived from California. 2. My brother who lives in California has just arrived. 3. In winter the days are short and the nights are long. 4. The house in which Washington lived is on the banks of the Potomac. 5. Under a spreading chestnut tree the village smithy stands. 6. We waited for a long time, but no one came. 7. An accident happened when the train was leaving the station. 8. The sun was setting behind the mountain in the distance.

A FIRST LATIN BOOK

FOR

JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

LESSON I

LATIN WORDS IN MODERN ENGLISH

THE SOURCES OF THE ENGLISH VOCABULARY

1. The English language did not always exist in the form in which we speak and write it. The words which we use have come from different sources and many of them are spelled and pronounced quite differently from the manner in which they were once spelled and pronounced. There are a few of our words which have been derived from the language of the Indians. Such are *moccasin, wigwam, tomahawk,* and *toboggan.* From Arabic we have the word *algebra* and from the ancient Irish we have *shamrock* and *bard.*

But the two most important sources of our words are the Classical Languages and Anglo-Saxon. By the Classical Languages we mean Latin and Greek. Anglo-Saxon is the name commonly given to the language spoken in England before the coming of the Normans from France in the year 1066. It is sometimes called Old English, but it differs from modern English so greatly that it seems a foreign language.

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE LATIN ELEMENT IN ENGLISH

2. It is impossible to say just what proportion of English words has come from each of these two sources, but probably much more than half of the words in an English dictionary are derived from Latin and Greek.

In the following paragraph from President Wilson's address to Congress recommending a declaration of war the italicized words are of Latin origin:

> With a *profound sense* of the *solemn* and even *tragical character* of the step I am taking and of the *grave responsibilities* which it *involves*, but in *unhesitating obedience* to what I deem my *constitutional duty*, I *advise* that the *Congress declare* the *recent course* of the *Imperial* German *government* to be in *fact* nothing less than war against the *government* and *people* of the *United States;* that it *formally accept* the *status* of *belligerent* which has thus been thrust upon it, and that it take *immediate* steps not only to put the *country* in a more thorough *state* of *defense*, but also to *exert* all its *power* and *employ* all its *resources* to bring the *government* of the German *empire* to *terms* and end the war.

3. The greater number of the new words which are being added to the language from time to time come from Latin or Greek. This is especially true of the names of new inventions. Such words as *telephone, automobile, submarine, tractor, motor, turbine,* are of this class. Further, the special terms used in chemistry, botany, physics, and other scientific studies, are of Latin or Greek origin.

In the study of law, words derived from Latin are of very great importance. Such words as *jury, court, legal, conviction, acquittal,* and a great many other important words and expressions which lawyers must understand come from Latin. In the study of medicine also a great many Latin and Greek words or derivatives are used. The words *medicine, sanatorium, hospital, invalid, doctor, patient,* come from Latin. When a doctor writes a prescription he generally uses Latin words or their abbreviations.

THE FORMS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

4. Some Latin words have been taken into the English language without any change in their spelling. Such are *census, orator, dictator, censor, terror, favor.* The meanings have in some

instances changed, but the greater number of such words retain the same, or nearly the same, meaning as in the original Latin.

But most English words of Latin origin have been somewhat changed in their form. In many instances this is due to the fact that they were first taken from the Latin into the French, and changed in form because of a difference of pronunciation. They were later brought into English from the French. Such are *memory*, from Latin **memoria,** *patience*, from Latin **patientia,** *ornament*, from Latin **ōrnāmentum.**

EXERCISE

5. Give the English words which are derived from the following Latin words:

victōria	īnfantia
industria	documentum
custōdia	tormentum
temperantia	monumentum
ēloquentia	armāmentum
innocentia	impedīmentum

LATIN ENDINGS IN ENGLISH WORDS

6. In the words given in section **5** the ending *-ia* of the Latin word appears in the derived English words as *-y*, *-tia* appears as *-ce* or *-cy*, and *-um* is dropped.

Other endings which also appear to change in accordance with fixed rules will be shown later.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. From what sources are most English words derived? 2. What is meant by Anglo-Saxon? 3. What other name is often used for Anglo-Saxon? 4. What was the date of the Norman invasion of England? 5. What are some important classes of English words which are derived from Greek and Latin? 6. Give some English words which have been taken from Latin without change of form. 7. Why have many English words of Latin derivation changed their form? 8. What changes in endings are illustrated in the English words derived from Latin which are given in section 5?

LESSON II

MODERN LANGUAGES DERIVED FROM LATIN: ANCIENT AND MODERN GREEK

LATIN IN ANCIENT TIMES

7. Latin is the language which was spoken by the Romans. When they extended their authority over all of Italy, their language came to be the language of Italy. Greek, however, continued to be spoken in some cities of the southern part, which had been founded by Greek settlers.

After the Romans conquered the nations living in the region which is now occupied by Spain, Portugal, France, Switzerland, and part of Austria, Latin began to be known throughout this part of the world. Roman soldiers and government officials were stationed in many towns of the conquered lands, and Roman merchants carried on business with the inhabitants. As a result of these influences, Latin finally took the place of the languages formerly spoken throughout the greater part of this entire region.

MODERN LATIN, OR ROMANCE LANGUAGES

8. When the Roman empire gradually lost its power and when the barbarians drove back the Roman armies, the influence of the Latin language still remained. The Spanish, French, Portuguese, Italian, and Roumanian languages are simply modern Latin. Many changes have taken place in the spelling and pronunciation of the Latin words which appear in these Romance languages, as they are called, and words have been introduced from other sources.

Some of the pronouns have disappeared, and others are used in a different way from that in which they were used by the Romans. The changes have been greater in some languages than in others, perhaps partly because of the influence of the languages spoken by the neighboring nations, and partly

because of the character of the language which the Latin replaced. But in the main these languages are Latin, and their relation to the language spoken by the Romans can easily be traced.

LATIN WORDS IN THE ROMANCE LANGUAGES

9. A glance at the following table, giving the numbers from one to ten in Latin and in the modern languages derived from Latin, will show how close the relation is between these languages and Latin.

Latin	*Italian*	*French*	*Spanish*	*Portuguese*	*Roumanian*	*English*
ūnus	uno	un	uno	um	un	*one*
duo	due	deux	dos	dois	doi	*two*
trēs	tre	trois	tres	trez	trei	*three*
quattuor	quattro	quatre	cuatro	quatro	patru	*four*
quīnque	cinque	cinq	cinco	cinco	cinci	*five*
sex	sei	six	seis	seis	sesse	*six*
septem	sette	sept	siete	sete	septe	*seven*
octō	otto	huit	ocho	oito	opt	*eight*
novem	nove	neuf	nueve	nove	noua	*nine*
decem	dieci	dix	diez	dez	zece	*ten*

Many other words in common use in French, Spanish, and the other Romance languages, have been very slightly changed from the original Latin form. Thus, the French word *arbre*, meaning *tree*, is from the Latin **arbor**; *terre*, meaning *land* is from the Latin **terra**; and *vendre*, meaning *to sell*, is from the Latin **vēndere**.

The Spanish word *agua*, meaning *water*, is from the Latin **aqua**; *mar*, meaning *sea*, is from the Latin **mare**; *amar*, meaning *to love*, is from the Latin **amāre**.

Many of these words follow certain rules or laws in their development from Latin into French or Spanish, and so they may easily be recognized when these rules are known. This is also true of the other languages of this group.

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE "MODERN LATIN" LANGUAGES

10. In the greater part of Austria and in part of Switzerland, Latin was displaced by other languages. But the extension of the Romance languages over South America and part of North America has more than made up for this loss.

The Spanish language is used throughout the whole of South America, with the exception of Brazil. In Brazil the language is Portuguese. Spanish is also the language of Mexico and is spoken extensively in parts of Texas, New Mexico, and Arizona, and to some extent in southern California. French is the language of part of Canada, and it is also spoken in some portions of Louisiana.

The Romance languages make one of the most important elements in the languages of the modern world.

ANCIENT GREEK AND ITS INFLUENCE

11. Greek was at one time spoken extensively in Asia Minor as well as in Greece and in some of the cities of southern Italy. In its modern form it is spoken in Greece, in some parts of the Balkan peninsula, and along the coast of Asia Minor. It has had less influence than Latin on the modern languages. But many scientific terms of Greek origin are in use, especially in English, and modern literature and art have been greatly influenced by the literature and art of ancient Greece.

THE ALPHABET

12. The alphabet used by the Russians and by some of the nations of eastern Europe is derived from the Greek alphabet. The Latin alphabet, which is the same as our English alphabet, comes from one form of the Greek, but not from the form which was used in the writing of Greek literature. The Romance languages and also some other important European languages, such as those of Sweden, Norway, Denmark, Holland, Poland, and Bohemia use the Latin alphabet, but some of the letters have special marks to indicate sounds which the Latin letters did not have.

The first five letters of the Greek alphabet show how much the Greek letters resembled the letters which we use.

Capitals	*Small Letters*	*Names*
A	α	Alpha
B	β	Beta
Γ	γ	Gamma
Δ	δ	Delta
E	ε	Epsilon

a. Our word *alphabet* is derived from the names of the first two Greek letters. The first, second, and fifth of the letters given above appear in the English alphabet in the same form as in the Greek. The third and fourth have developed into G and D.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Where is Rome? 2. In what part of Italy was Greek spoken? 3. Name some modern nations occupying territory which was once part of the Roman Empire. 4. How did the early inhabitants of these regions become familiar with Latin? 5. What is the general name which is given to these modern languages which are derived from Latin? 6. Name some of the more important languages of this group. 7. Where is Roumania? 8. What Romance languages are extensively used in South America? 9. In what parts of North America are Romance languages spoken? 10. Where is modern Greek spoken? 11. What are some of the ways in which the influence of the Greeks on the modern world is shown?

ROMAN LAMPS

LESSON III

FORMS OF NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

THE CASE FORMS OF ENGLISH PRONOUNS

13. In English, as we have seen (page xxvii, section 18), we use a different form of a personal pronoun as subject from that which we use as object of a verb or preposition, and we use still another form to refer to a person as possessing something. Thus:

He talks (subject, *he*)
We love him (object, *him*)
I have his pencil (possessive, *his*)

CASE FORMS OF ENGLISH NOUNS

14. We use the same form of a noun for the subject and for the object, but we have a different form to denote the possessor. Thus, we say:

The boy talks (subject, *boy*)
We love the boy (object, *boy*)
I have the boy's pencil (possessive, *boy's*)

CASE FORMS OF LATIN NOUNS

15. In Latin, and in some other languages, nouns as well as pronouns have different forms to distinguish the subject, the object, and the possessor. Thus, the Latin noun for *girl* is **puella** when it is the subject, but **puellam** when it is the object, and **puellae** when it denotes the possessor.

DECLENSION

16. The name Declension is given to the process of grouping together these different forms of a noun or pronoun, and in giving these forms one is said to decline the word.

In Latin, nouns and pronouns have a larger number of forms than in English. Instead of three cases, there are five. In English, all prepositions have their objects in the accusative

(objective) case. In Latin, some prepositions take one case as their object, other prepositions a different case. The German language also has different cases thus used with prepositions

INFLECTIONAL AND ANALYTIC LANGUAGES

17. Sometimes a case form without any preposition is used in Latin to express an idea which in English would require a preposition with an object. A language which makes extensive use of case forms to show the relations of words in a sentence is called Inflectional. Latin, Greek, and German are inflectional languages. A language which commonly uses prepositions to show the relation of words and which has few case forms and few verb forms is called Analytic. English, French, Spanish, and Italian are analytic languages. Anglo-Saxon, or Old English, was an inflectional language.

THE LATIN CASES

18. The names of the Latin cases are as follows: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative. The nominative is the case of the subject or of the predicate noun, the genitive is the case of the possessor, and the accusative is the case of the direct object of a verb. The accusative is also used as the object of some prepositions.

The meanings and uses of the dative and ablative cases will be given later.

a. The English case which denotes the possessor is also used to denote certain other ideas which are somewhat like the idea of possession. Thus we may say *the soldier's friend* just as we may say *the soldier's hat*, although the first of these phrases does not really indicate possession. This is also true of the genitive case in Latin.

THE GENITIVE USED TO TRANSLATE A PHRASE

19. We may say *the friend of the soldier* as an expression of the same idea as *the soldier's friend.* Since the phrase *of the soldier* means the same as *the soldier's*, it will be expressed in Latin in

exactly the same way. That is, the word for *soldier*, in this phrase, will be put in the genitive case and no word for *of* will be used. If we are translating from Latin into English, the genitive of the word which means *soldier* may be translated either *soldier's* or *of the soldier*. We should use whichever of the two seemed to be the better English in the sentence in which we were employing it.

MINIATURE FARM YARD SCENE
(Objects found in ruins of villa near Pompeii)

EXERCISE

20. In the following sentences, tell what case would be required in Latin for the italicized words: 1. My *brother* lives in this city. 2. I have written a *letter*. 3. The *soldier's* gun was not loaded. 4. This was the home *of my grandfather*. 5. When will the *train* arrive? 6. Did you hear the *music?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. How many case forms do English nouns have in the singular? 2. How many in the plural? 3. How many case forms do English personal pronouns have in the singular, and how many in the plural? 4. What is meant by *declension?* 5. What is an inflectional language? 6. What is an analytic language? 7. To which class does English belong? 8. Name the Latin cases. 9. How is the nominative used? 10. Give two uses of the accusative. 11. What is sometimes used in English as the equivalent of the case of the possessor? 12. In what two ways is the genitive translated?

LESSON IV

THE DATIVE: THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

THE INDIRECT OBJECT

21. Verbs of *giving*, *saying*, and *showing*, and a few others, may have a dependent noun or pronoun in English to denote the person to whom one is said to give or say or show something. Such a word is called an Indirect Object.

I gave my *brother* a letter.
His father told *him* an interesting story.

In the above sentences the words *brother* and *him* are indirect objects.

THE FORM OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT IN LATIN AND IN ENGLISH

22. In English we use the same form of a pronoun for the direct and for the indirect objects.

We did not see *them*.
We gave *them* our tickets.

In the first of the preceding sentences, *them* is a direct object; in the second it is an indirect object. In Latin, the indirect object is put in the dative case, while the direct object, as has been seen, is put in the accusative.

A PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE USED INSTEAD OF AN INDIRECT OBJECT

23. In English we often use a phrase consisting of *to* and a noun or pronoun as the equivalent of the indirect object. We may say *I gave him the book*, or *I gave the bock to him*. The phrase *to him* in the second sentence is equivalent to the indirect object *him*, in the first. Therefore *to him* in the second sentence will be translated into Latin by exactly the same case as that used to translate *him* in the first sentence, that is, the dative, and there will be no separate word for *to*.

THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

24. There are certain English adjectives with which we commonly use a phrase with *to*. Such are the adjectives *kind, friendly, pleasing, dear, useful,* and some others. Thus, *He is kind to his sister. You are friendly to everybody. The news was not pleasing to me.*

With Latin adjectives which have the same meaning as the English adjectives given above, the dative is used, and no separate word for *to* is employed.

PHRASES WITH *TO* DENOTING PLACE TO WHICH

25. English phrases with *to* are sometimes used to denote the place toward which someone or something moves. Thus, *He has gone to Europe. I walked to the station.* Such phrases are not translated into Latin by the dative. They may easily be distinguished from the phrases given in section **23.** Their use will be explained later.

THE ABLATIVE

26. Latin prepositions which mean *from, with,* and *in* take their objects in the ablative case. There are also certain uses of the ablative without a preposition which will be explained later.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write an English sentence containing an indirect object. 2. Write an English sentence containing a noun phrase with *to* which is the equivalent of an indirect object. 3. Write an English sentence containing a phrase with *to* which depends upon an adjective. 4. Write an English sentence containing a phrase of the kind described in section **25.** 5. In these sentences which you have written, point out the words which would stand in the dative if put into Latin. 6. Point out the direct objects in the sentences which you have written. 7. Point out the subjects of these sentences.

LESSON V

DECLENSION OF *ROSA:* THE ARTICLE

THE DECLENSION OF *ROSA*

27 The declension of the noun **rosa** is as follows:

Singular

NOMINATIVE	rosa,	*a rose* (as subject or predicate)
GENITIVE	rosae,	*of a rose, rose's*
DATIVE	rosae,	*to a rose*
ACCUSATIVE	rosam,	*a rose* (as object)
ABLATIVE	rosā,	(*from, with, in*) *a rose*

Plural

NOMINATIVE	rosae,	*roses* (as subject or predicate)
GENITIVE	rosārum,	*of roses*
DATIVE	rosīs,	*to the roses*
ACCUSATIVE	rosās,	*roses* (as object)
ABLATIVE	rosīs,	(*from, with, in*) *roses*

The following sentences illustrate the uses of the Latin cases:

The rose (**rosa**) is beautiful.
The fragrance of the rose (**rosae**) is delightful.
The sunshine has given color to the rose (**rosae**).
The girl is carrying a rose (**rosam**).
The dew is on the rose (**in rosā**).
The roses (**rosae**) are beautiful.
The fragrance of the roses (**rosārum**) is delightful.
The sunshine has given color to the roses (**rosīs**).
The girl is carrying roses (**rosās**).
The dew is on the roses (**in rosīs**).

28. VOCABULARY

epistula, letter	**rosa,** rose
nauta, sailor	**silva,** forest

THE ARTICLE

29. Latin has no word for the definite article *the* or for the indefinite article *a* or *an*. These words must be supplied when necessary in translating. Thus **rosa** may be translated, *rose, a rose,* or *the rose,* as the sense of the sentence requires.

IDENTICAL FORMS OF CASES

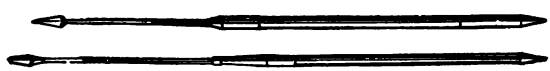
30. The genitive singular, the dative singular, and the nominative plural of **rosa** are spelled alike. Also the dative plural and the ablative plural have the same forms. It will usually be possible to tell from the rest of the sentence what case a doubtful form really is.

THE FORM OF THE ABLATIVE

31. The ablative singular is to be distinguished from the nominative singular by the fact that the final **a** of the ablative is long (**ā**), while the final **a** of the nominative is short.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline in the singular all the words ending in **a** in the list of Latin words in section **5**. 2. Decline **victōria** in the plural. 3. Decline in the singular and plural the word **nauta,** giving the meaning of each form. 4. Decline in the singular and plural **epistula,** giving the meaning of each form. 5. Tell what is the case and number of each of the following forms: **custōdiam, industriā, victōriās, nautārum, temperantia.** 6. Name two or more cases in which the following forms might be found: **ēloquentiae** (*singular number*), **nautīs, victōriae, rosīs, silvae.** 7. Give the Latin equivalents of the following phrases: of the sailor, of the sailors, of the forest, to the sailor (*indirect object*), of victory, of victories, innocence (*as direct object*), sailors (*as direct object*), of the roses, sailors (*as indirect object*).



ROMAN JAVELINS

LESSON VI

CASE ENDINGS: PREPOSITIONS

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS

32. There are five declensions of Latin nouns. In Latin dictionaries and vocabularies the genitive singular, or its case ending, is given after the nominative to indicate the declension to which a noun belongs. The genitive singular ending of the first declension is **-ae.**

THE FIRST DECLENSION

33. All nouns of the first declension are declined like **rosa.** The case endings in the first declension are as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
NOMINATIVE	**-a**	**-ae**
GENITIVE	**-ae**	**-ārum**
DATIVE	**-ae**	**-īs**
ACCUSATIVE	**-am**	**-ās**
ABLATIVE	**-ā**	**-īs**

a. The part of a noun to which the terminations are added and which is not changed in declension, is called the Base. The base of **rosa** is **ros-.** The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

LATIN PREPOSITIONS

34. Three important Latin prepositions are as follows:

ā, ab, *from, by*
cum, *with*
in, *in, on*

a. The two forms **ā** and **ab** have the same meaning. Before all words which begin with a vowel or *h,* **ab** must be used; before most words which begin with a consonant **ā** is used.

b. These three prepositions have their objects in the ablative case.

THE USE OF *Ā* OR *AB*

35. The preposition **ā** or **ab** means *by* only when the object refers to a person, and when the prepositional phrase is used to denote the person by whom some act is said to be done. Thus, *The letter was written by my brother.* The phrase *by my brother* will be translated by **ā** with its object in the ablative.

THE USE OF *CUM*

36. A very common use of the ablative with **cum** is found in phrases which denote the person with whom another person is associated in doing something. Thus, *I was walking with a friend.*

THE USE OF *IN*

37. Latin phrases consisting of **in** and the ablative case tell where some act occurs or where something is, as in the English phrases *in the forest, on the table.*

ROMAN GEMS

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. How many declensions are there in Latin? 2. Which case ending is used to indicate the declension to which a noun belongs? 3. What is the ending of the genitive singular in the first declension? 4. Give the case endings of the first declension in all the cases, singular and plural. 5. Give three Latin prepositions which have their objects in the ablative. 6. Write the Latin phrase for *by the sailor* in the sentence *The woman was rescued by the sailor.* 7. Write the Latin phrase for *with the sailors* in the sentence *The captain has gone on board with the sailors.* 8. Decline the noun **silva.** 9. Give the Latin phrases which mean *in the forest, in the forests.*

LESSON VII

FORMS OF VERBS: CONJUGATION OF *PORTŌ*

FORMS OF THE VERB

38. In the present tense of the active voice, the English verb *praise* has a different form for the third person singular from that used in the first person. Thus, *I praise, he praises.* In the plural, the forms are the same for all persons: *we praise, you praise, they praise.* In Latin there is a different form for each person, and the forms of the plural differ from those of the singular. The endings show what the person and number of a verb are, and the pronouns which mean *I, you, he,* etc., are commonly omitted. Thus **portō** means *I carry,* **portāmus** means *we carry,* and the subjects *I* and *we* are denoted by the endings **-ō** and **-mus.** These endings of a verb which show person and number are called Personal Endings.

a. In some modern European languages the pronoun as subject is often omitted as in Latin, for the reason that the ending shows what the person and number of the verb is.

CONJUGATION

The grouping together of the different forms of a verb is called Conjugation, and in giving all these different forms one is said to conjugate the verb.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

39. A verb which states something as a fact or asks a question which can be answered by a statement of fact is said to be in the Indicative Mood.[1] Thus, *We walk. Has the boy arrived?*

---

[1]The other moods of the verb will be explained later.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *PORTŌ*

40. The verb **portō,** *I carry,* is conjugated in the present tense of the active voice, indicative mood, as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
1st person	portō, *I carry*	portāmus, *we carry*
2d person	portās, *you carry*	portātis, *you carry*
3d person	portat, *he, she, it carries*	portant, *they carry*

Conjugate like **portō** the verbs **laudō,** *I praise,* and **dō,**[1] *I give.*

THE PERSONAL ENDINGS

41. The personal endings which have been seen in the conjugation of **portō** are used in the present tense of all regular verbs in the active voice of the indicative mood. They are as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
-ō,[2] *I*	**-mus,** *we*
-s, *you* (singular)	**-tis,** *you* (plural)
-t, *he, she, it*	**-nt,** *they*

THE SECOND PERSON IN LATIN AND IN ENGLISH

42. In modern English the word *you* may refer to one person or to more than one. In Latin there are different forms both of the pronoun (when used) and of the verb, to indicate whether one person or more than one is meant in the second person: **portās,** *you carry,* spoken to one person, **portātis,** *you carry,* spoken to more than one. In older English *thou* was used for the second person singular, and the verb of the singular differed from that of the plural, but today this form is found only in poetry and in prayers or other religious expressions. Modern European languages keep the second person singular, but it has special uses which are not quite the same as in the older English and the Latin.

---

[1] The verb **dō** differs from all other verbs in having the vowel **a** short in the first person plural, and the second person plural.

[2] In the first person singular of some tenses to be given later **m** is used instead of **ō**.

RUINS OF A BUILDING IN THE ROMAN FORUM

TRANSLATION OF THE THIRD PERSON SINGULAR

43. The forms **laudat, portat, dat,** etc., may be translated with the subjects *he* or *she* or *it*. When such words are used in sentences, it is possible to decide from the meaning of the sentence which pronoun is to be used.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What are the uses of the indicative mood? 2. How many forms of the English verb *praise* are there in common use in the present tense, active voice, to indicate person and number? 3. How many forms of a Latin verb are there in a tense of the active voice? 4. Why may personal pronouns as subjects be omitted in Latin? 5. What is meant by *conjugating* a verb? 6. What is the difference between the English use of *you* and the Latin usage in referring to the second person? 7. What is the difference between modern English and older English usage in this respect? 8. Give the personal endings of portō as seen in the present indicative active.

LESSON VIII

THE CONJUGATIONS: THE PRESENT STEM

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

44. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs. In Latin dictionaries and vocabularies the present active infinitive, or its termination, is used to indicate the conjugation to which a verb belongs. The termination of the present active infinitive of the first conjugation is **-āre.**

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

45. The verbs of the first conjugation are conjugated like **portō,** of which the present indicative active has been given in section **40.** The present active infinitives of **portō** and **laudō** are **portāre,** *to carry,* and **laudāre,** *to praise.* The verb **dō** differs from all other Latin verbs of the first conjugation in that the infinitive termination has the **a** short: **dare,** *to give.*

THE ROMANCE VERB

46. In Spanish, French, and the other modern languages derived from Latin, there are three conjugations instead of four. The loss of one of the conjugations of the original Latin has come about through a confusion in the use of forms.

THE PRESENT STEM OF LATIN VERBS

47. The present tense of Latin verbs is made by adding the personal endings to what is called the Present Stem. The present stem is found by dropping the final **-re** of the present active infinitive. Thus, the present stem of all verbs in the first conjugation ends in **ā.** The vowel in which the present stem ends is called the Characteristic Vowel of the conjugation. In the first conjugation, the characteristic **ā** becomes short before the personal endings **-t** and **-nt.** Before **-ō** it disappears.

POSITION OF THE OBJECT

48. In Latin the object regularly stands before the verb, instead of being placed after it as in English. Thus, *I carry the letter* is in Latin **Epistulam portō.**

EXERCISES

49. Translate: 1. Industriam laudāmus. 2. Rosam portās. 3. Nautam laudant. 4. Rosās dō. 5. Ēloquentiam laudāre. 6. Epistulam portāre.

50. 1. You (*sing.*) praise the victory. 2. He praises eloquence. 3. They give roses. 4. We carry roses. 5. To carry roses. 6. To praise victory. 7. To give a rose. 8. To carry letters. 9. To praise industry. 10. To praise the victories.

ROMAN PITCHER

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What form of the verb is used to indicate the conjugation to which a verb belongs? 2. What is the termination of the present active infinitive of the first conjugation? 3. In what respect does the infinitive ending of dō differ from that of other verbs of the first conjugation? 4. How many conjugations are there in the Romance languages? 5. How is the present stem of the Latin verb found? 6. What is meant by the *characteristic vowel* of a conjugation? 7. What is the characteristic vowel of the first conjugation? 8. What is the position of the object in Latin?

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

51. (1) The sources of the English vocabulary.
(2) Latin words in English, in changed form.
(3) Latin endings in English derivatives.
(4) Latin in ancient times.
(5) The Romance languages.
(6) Greek in ancient times.
(7) The alphabets of modern European languages.
(8) Case forms of English nouns and pronouns.
(9) The Latin cases.
(10) The first declension.
(11) The first conjugation, present indicative active.
(12) The personal endings in the active.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

52. Define the following English words and give La words with which they are connected in derivation.[1]

eloquence	portable
epistle	rose
industry	temperance
innocence	victory
laudable	

[1] The lists of English derivatives given in this and later review lessons and follo the vocabularies in subsequent lessons are not meant to include all derived or re words. They may be supplemented by assigned study of such character as seems be the teacher.

A ROMAN WALL PAINTING

LESSON IX

GENDER IN LATIN: THE SECOND DECLENSION

GENDER OF NOUNS

53. There are three genders of nouns in Latin, masculine, feminine, and neuter. Many Latin nouns which we should expect to be neuter, from their meaning, are masculine or feminine. This is also true of many modern European languages, and it is one of the great difficulties which English speaking persons have in learning these languages.

GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION

54. The gender of many Latin nouns may be known by the ending of the nominative and by the declension. Thus, the nouns of the first declension which are given in this book are all feminine, with the exception of three. In the vocabularies, the letters M. or F. or N. printed after the noun indicate what the gender is. All the nouns ending in **a** which have been given thus far are feminine, except **nauta,** which is masculine.

THE SECOND DECLENSION

55. Nouns of the second declension have the genitive ending **-ī,** in the singular. The nominative ends in **-us, -er,** or **-um.**

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

56. The nouns which end in **-um** are declined as follows:

templum, *a temple*

BASE, **templ-**

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	templum	templa
GEN.	templī	templōrum
DAT.	templō	templīs
ACC.	templum	templa
ABL.	templō	templīs

a. All nouns ending in **-um** are in the neuter gender.

NEGATIVE SENTENCES

57. The Latin adverb meaning *not* is **nōn.** In English negative sentences we commonly use a form of the verb *do.* Thus, *I do not work; he does not see; they did not go.* In Latin the negative expressions have no word corresponding to this use of *do.* *I do not praise* is in Latin, **Nōn laudō** (*I praise not*). *He does not give* is **Nōn dat** (*he gives not*).

58. VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī, N., war
cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan, advice
nōn, *adv.*, not
perīculum, -ī, N., peril, danger
templum, -ī, N., temple
verbum, -ī, N., word

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

belligerent counsel peril temple verbal

EXERCISES

59. Translate: 1. Bellōrum; verbī; in bellō; in templīs. 2. Bellum nōn laudāmus. 3. Cōnsilium laudō. 4. Epistulam nōn portō.

60. 1. Of danger; in danger; in dangers; of words; of a word. 2. They do not praise war. 3. I praise the temple. 4. He praises the temples. 5. We praise the plans. 6. I carry letters.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the difference between the use of genders in Latin and in English? 2. What is the gender of most nouns of the first declension? 3. What is the ending of the genitive singular in the second declension? 4. What are the different endings of the nominative singular in the second declension? 5. What is the gender of nouns ending in **-um?** 6. What cases in the plural of the second declension have the same ending as the same cases in the first declension? 7. What is the difference between negative expressions in Latin and in English? 8. Decline **bellum, perīculum, verbum.**

LESSON X

THE SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION IN *-US* AND *-ER*

61. The second declension has a large number of masculine nouns which end in **-us** and **-er**. They are declined as follows:

	dominus, M., *master*	**puer**, M., *boy*	**ager**, M., *field*
	BASE, **domin-**	BASE, **puer-**	BASE, **agr-**
		Singular	
NOM.	dominus	puer	ager
GEN.	dominī	puerī	agrī
DAT.	dominō	puerō	agrō
ACC.	dominum	puerum	agrum
ABL.	dominō	puerō	agrō
		Plural	
NOM.	dominī	puerī	agrī
GEN.	dominōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum
DAT.	dominīs	puerīs	agrīs
ACC.	dominōs	puerōs	agrōs
ABL.	dominīs	puerīs	agrīs

CASE ENDINGS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

62. The endings of these three words in any case except the nominative singular are the same. Also, they are the same as those of **templum** (section **56**) except in the nominative singular, the nominative plural, and the accusative plural. The case endings of the second declension, therefore, are as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	**-us, -er, -um**	**-ī, -a**
GEN.	**-ī**	**-ōrum**
DAT.	**-ō**	**-īs**
ACC.	**-um**	**-ōs, -a**
ABL.	**-ō**	**-īs**

CLASSES OF *-ER* NOUNS

63. The nouns **puer** and **ager** differ in declension only in the act that **puer** seems to add to the nominative the case endings of ıll the other cases, while **ager** drops the **e** of the nominative ›efore the case endings of the other cases. When a new word is ;iven in the vocabulary, the genitive will be given, as well as .he nominative, to show whether it is declined like **puer** or **ager.**

64. VOCABULARY

ıger, **agrī,** M., field
puer, puerī, M., boy
lominus, -ī, M., master

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

ıgriculture	dominate	domineer	puerile
	dominant	domain	

EXERCISES

65. 1. In agrō; cum puerō; dominōrum; agrōrum; ā dominō; cum nautā. 2. Agrōs laudāmus. 3. Agrōs dominī laudāmus. 4. Verba puerī nōn laudāmus. 5. Puerōs laudō.

66. 1. With the master; of the boy; in the fields; with the boys; by the boy. 2. I do not praise the boy. 3. You (*singular*) do not praise the boys. 4. He does not praise the master.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What are the endings of the nominative of masculine nouns in the second declension? 2. What is the difference between the declension of **puer** and of **ager?** 3. In what cases of the plural do the endings of masculine nouns differ from those of the neuter? 4. Give the ending of the genitive plural of the first declension and of the second declension. 5. Give the ending of the accusative plural of the first declension and of masculine nouns of the second declension. 6. Give all the endings of masculine nouns of the second declension.

LESSON XI

SUBJECT OF THE VERB: ORDER OF WORDS

VERBS WITH THE SUBJECT EXPRESSED

67. In the Latin sentences which have been given thus the subjects of the verbs have been indicated only by the ings. Thus **laudat** has been translated *he* (or *she*) *praises*, **laudant** has been translated *they praise*. But these forms have nouns in the nominative case as subjects. **Puer la** means *the boy praises*, **Puerī laudant** means *the boys praise*. pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, or *they* are supplied only when no nour pronoun) is used as subject.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB

68. A verb agrees with its subject in person and num **Puer laudat; puerī laudant.**

POSITION OF THE VERB

69. In Latin the verb regularly stands at the end of the tence. There are certain variations from this rule, but for present it will be better to follow this order in writing L exercises. Thus, in the sentence *The boy loves his friends*, Latin order would be, *The boy his friends loves*. In En we distinguish the subject from the object by its position. since the Latin has a different case form for the subject and object (except in neuter nouns), the order might differ gre from that which we use, and still the sense would be clear.

The order of words in modern European languages also di from the English order. For instance, the verb is somet put after the object as in Latin.

POSITION OF THE GENITIVE

70. The genitive commonly stands after the noun it mod unless it is to be made especially emphatic or prominent. T

in the phrase, *the boy's father*, the word for *boy's* will be placed after the word for *father*. This order is followed also in English if a phrase with *of* is used, as in the expression *the father of the boy*, but the position of the Latin genitive is the same, whether it is to be represented in English by *boy's* or *of the boy*.

EXERCISES

71. 1. Dominus puerum laudat. 2. Puer dominum laudat. 3. Puerī dominum nōn laudant. 4. Dominī puerōs laudant. 5. Puer rosam portat. 6. Nauta epistulam dat. 7. Puer victōriam nautārum laudat. 8. Nauta epistulās puerōrum portat. 9. Dominus cōnsilia nautae nōn laudat.

72. 1. The boy praises the temple. 2. The master praises the boy's plan. 3. The sailor does not praise the boy. 4. The sailor carries the master's letter. 5. The boy carries the sailor's letters. 6. The boys give roses.

ROMAN MIRROR

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the ending of the verb in the third person of the present indicative active when the subject is a noun in the singular number? when it is a noun in the plural? 2. When will the pronouns *he, she, it, they* be supplied in translation? 3. What is regularly the position of the verb in a Latin sentence? 4. How do we distinguish the subject from the object in English? How in Latin? 5. Point out the objects in the sentences of section 72.

LESSON XII

THE SECOND DECLENSION (Continued): POSITION OF THE DATIVE

DECLENSION OF *VIR*

73. There is one noun of the second declension which ends in **-ir.** It is declined as follows:

vir, *man*
BASE, **vir-**

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	vir	virī
GEN.	virī	virōrum
DAT.	virō	virīs
ACC.	virum	virōs
ABL.	virō	virīs

a. A few compounds of **vir** are declined in the same way.

POSITION OF THE DATIVE

74. When a sentence has both a direct and an indirect object, the indirect commonly stands before the direct. Thus, in the sentence *The boy gives his friend a pencil,* the Latin order would be *The boy his friend a pencil gives.* The fact that the case forms of the words *boy, friend,* and *pencil* show which is subject, which is indirect object, and which is direct object, makes the meaning of the sentence clear.

When the dative is used with adjectives it commonly stands before the adjective, unless especially emphasized. Thus in the expression *my country, dear to me* the Latin order would be *my country, to me dear.*

75. VOCABULARY

ambulō, -āre, walk
amō, -āre, love
avāritia, -ae, F., avarice, greed
fēmina, -ae, F., woman
vir, virī, M., man

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

amble	avarice
amiable	feminine
avaricious	virile

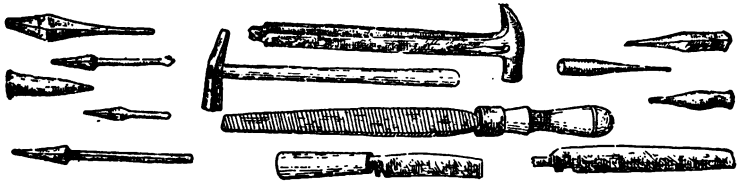
EXERCISES

76. 1. Fēmina puerō rosam dat. 2. Puer virō epistulam dat. 3. Fēmina rosās amat. 4. Virī perīculum amant. 5. Vir rosam fēminae laudat. 6. Puer in agrō dominī ambulat. 7. Avāritiam nōn laudāmus. 8. Fēminae nautīs rosās dant. 9. Dominus virō epistulās dat. 10. Fēminae avāritiam dominī nōn laudant.

77. 1. The man praises the temples. 2. The woman walks with the boy. 3. The boys give roses to the woman. 4. The woman gives the boy a rose. 5. The man gives the boy's letter to the woman. 6. The men walk in the forest. 7. The boy walks with the woman.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **ambulō** in the present indicative active. 2. Decline **fēmina.** 3. Decline **puer.** 4. Point out the datives in section **76.** 5. Point out an indirect object and a phrase equivalent to an indirect object in section **77.** 6. What is the position of the genitive when not emphatic? Of the dative?



ROMAN TOOLS

LESSON XIII

ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS IN THE PREDICATE

PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

78. In English, the forms of the verb *to be* are often followed by an adjective which describes the subject of the verb. Thus *The man is tall.* The adjective *tall* describes *man,* which is the subject of the verb *is.* An adjective which is thus connected with its noun by a form of the verb *to be* is called a Predicate Adjective.

PREDICATE NOUNS

79. Often the forms of *to be* are followed by a noun (or pronoun) instead of an adjective. Thus, *The man is a sailor.* A noun used in this way is called a Predicate Noun. The predicate noun denotes the same person or thing as the subject.

CASE OF THE PREDICATE NOUN

80. The predicate noun is put in the nominative case. Since English and most other modern languages do not have different forms of nouns for the object and subject, the importance of distinguishing between the predicate noun and the object is not always realized. But one who does not recognize this difference will be unable to understand the use of our pronoun forms in such sentences as *It is I* (not *me*); *it is he* (not *him*). A correct use of *who* and *whom* is also made easier by an understanding of the distinction between the predicate noun and the object.

81. VOCABULARY

amīcus, -ī, M., friend
est, is, he (she, it) is
fīlia, -ae, F., daughter
servus, -ī, M., slave

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

amicable servant servile

TEMPLE AT PAESTUM

EXERCISES

82. 1. Vir nauta est. 2. Puer nōn servus est. 3. Fēmina fīlia nautae est. 4. Amīcus nautae silvam amat. 5. Fīliae nautae fēminam amant. 6. Vir nōn dominus servī est. 7. Servus epistulam dominī portat. 8. Servus epistulam dominō dat. 9. Servī in agrō cum amīcō dominī ambulant. 10. Servī dominum nōn amant.

83. 1. The man is not a slave. 2. The man praises the slave. 3. The man gives the slave a letter. 4. The boy is not a friend of the sailor. 5. The master's daughter walks in the forest. 6. The sailor is not a friend of the boy. 7. We walk in the fields with the boy's friend.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is a predicate adjective? 2. Form an English sentence containing a predicate adjective. 3. Form an English sentence containing a predicate noun; a predicate pronoun. 4. Form an English sentence containing a direct object. 5. Tell what would be the case in Latin of each noun in the last two of these sentences which you have formed. 6. Point out the predicate nouns and also the objects in the sentences of section **83.** 7. What is meant by a *servile* manner?

LESSON XIV

THE VERB *SUM*

CONJUGATION OF *SUM*

84. In Latin, as in modern languages, the verb which means *to be* is irregular. It can not be said to belong to any one of the four conjugations. The personal endings, however, are the same as those of the regular verbs. In the first person singular of the present indicative the ending is **-m,** instead of **-ō.** The infinitive is **esse,** *to be.*

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

85. The present indicative is as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*
es, *you are*	estis, *you are*
est, *he, she, it is*	sunt, *they are*

POSITION OF *SUM*

86. The forms of the verb **sum** often stand at the end of the sentence, like other verbs, but sometimes they are placed before the predicate noun or adjective. Thus, we may write **Vir nauta est** or **Vir est nauta.**

87. VOCABULARY

aurum, -ī, N., gold
equus, -ī, M., horse
habitō, -āre, live, dwell
īnsula, -ae, F., island
liber, librī, M., book
stō, stāre, stand
via, -ae, F., road, street

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

equestrian	insulation	station
habitation	library	via (*in time tables*)

EXERCISES

88. 1. Equī in agrō sunt. 2. Puer librōs portat. 3. Nautae aurum portant. 4. Fēmina in viā stat. 5. Amīcus puerī in īnsulā habitat. 6. Amīcus virī es. 7. Amīcī virōrum sumus. 8. Equī in silvā stant. 9. In viā cum amīcīs sum. 10. Dominus servōrum nōn es. 11. Templum in īnsulā est. 12. Servus in silvā habitat.

89. 1. The boys stand in the street. 2. The sailor's daughter carries a book. 3. The man praises the book. 4. We do not live on an island. 5. We are friends of the boy. 6. The boys are friends of the sailor. 7. The gold is in the temple.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the infinitives of **amō, ambulō,** and **sum,** together with the meaning of each. 2. Decline **liber.** 3. Decline **aurum** in the singular. 4. Decline **via.** 5. Give the third person plural of **stō** and of **sum** with the meaning of each. 6. Point out the ablatives in section **88.** 7. Point out the phrases in section **89** which will be translated into Latin by the genitive. 8. What is meant by *auriferous* rock?

LESSON XV

FORMS OF ADJECTIVES

THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

90. In Latin, and also in many modern languages, adjectives as well as nouns have different forms to show gender, number, and case. Thus, the form of the word which means *good* has a different ending when it describes a masculine noun from that which is used when it describes a feminine or neuter noun. Such languages as French and Spanish have adjective forms in different genders, although they are not inflectional languages (section **17**). An adjective is said to agree with a noun in gender or number or case when it is put in the same gender or number or case as the noun.

AGREEMENT IN GENDER, NUMBER, AND CASE

91. In Latin, adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. A predicate adjective (section **78**) agrees with the subject.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

92. A great many Latin adjectives are declined in part like nouns of the second declension and in part like nouns of the first declension. The masculine and neuter forms are in the second declension, and the feminine forms are in the first declension. Adjectives of this class having the masculine ending in **-us** are declined as follows:

DECLENSION OF *BONUS*

Singular

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

a. The case endings of this adjective are the same as the endings which have been seen in the declension of the nouns **dominus, rosa,** and **templum,** sections **61, 27, 56**.

93. VOCABULARY

bonus, -a, -um, good

magnus, -a, -um, large, great

EXERCISES

94. Translate into Latin: 1. The plan is good. 2. The ɔys are good. 3. The forest is large. 4. The horse is large. The horses are large. 6. The temple is not large. 7. The ɔy's plans are good. 8. The war is great. 9. The book good.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the rule for the agreement of Latin adjectives? 2. With hat does a predicate adjective agree? 3. Give the case endings of **bonus** ı the singular. 4. Decline **magnus.** 5. Give the rules for the gender of ɔuns of the first and second declensions. 6. What is meant by *magnitude?*

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

95. ager, agrī, M.
amīcus, -ī, M.
aurum, -ī, N.
avāritia, -ae, F.
bellum, -ī, N.
cōnsilium, -ī, N.
dominus, -ī, M.
ēloquentia, -ae F.
epistula, -ae, F.
ēquus, -ī, M.
fēmina, -ae, F.
fīlia, -ae, F.
innocentia, -ae, F.
īnsula, -ae, F.
liber, librī, M.
nauta, -ae, M.
perīculum, -ī, N.
puer, -ī, M.
rosa, -ae, F.
servus, -ī, M.
silva, -ae, F.
templum, -ī, N.
verbum, -ī, N.
via, -ae, F.
victōria, -ae, F.
vir, -ī, M.
bonus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um
ambulō, -āre
amō, -āre
dō, dare
habitō, -āre
laudō, -āre
portō, -āre
stō, stāre
sum, esse
nōn
ā, ab
cum
in

LESSON XVI

USE OF ADJECTIVES

PREDICATE AND ADHERENT ADJECTIVES

96. An adjective which describes the person or thing denoted by a noun is said to modify the noun, because it makes more definite the kind of person or thing meant by the noun. It may be used in the predicate, as has been seen (section **78**), or it may stand with the noun and serve to modify it directly, without the use of a form of the verb *to be*. Thus, *a brave man, a tall tree*. Adjectives which are used as *brave* and *tall* are used in these expressions are sometimes called Adherent adjectives, because they are attached directly to their nouns. Adhere means *to cling close to*.

a. Nouns may also be modified by words which merely point out what person or thing is meant, such as *this, that*.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

97. In Latin, adherent adjectives which serve to describe a person or thing by telling some quality, other than size, quantity, or extent, commonly stand after the noun. Thus, in the Latin equivalent for *a kind friend* the word for *kind* usually stands after the word for *friend*. In some modern European languages also, adjectives often follow the nouns which they modify. The French words for a *black horse* will have the word for *black* after the word for *horse*. Adjectives which describe something by telling its size, quantity, or extent, such as words meaning *large, small, much, many, all,* regularly precede their nouns in Latin, just as all adherent adjectives regularly do in English.

98. VOCABULARY

benignus, -a, -um, kind
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing
lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad
multus, -a, -um, much; *plural,* many

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

benign gratify latitude multiply

EXERCISES

99. 1. Amīcus puerī bonī benignus est. 2. Amīcus puerō[1] bonō benignus est. 3. Fēminae puerum bonum laudant. 4. Cōnsilium puerī virō grātum est. 5. Ager nōn est lātus. 6. Viae nōn sunt lātae. 7. Multum aurum in templō est. 8. Multī equī in agrō sunt. 9. Multae fēminae in viā sunt.

100. Decline the phrases which mean *a good friend, a good woman, a good plan,* always placing the adjective after the noun.

A ROMAN SACRIFICE

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is meant by the statement that an adjective *modifies* a noun? 2. What is the difference between the position of adherent adjectives in English and in some modern European languages? 3. What is the position in Latin of adherent adjectives denoting size, quantity, or extent? 4. What is commonly the position of other descriptive adherent adjectives than those denoting size, quantity, or extent? 5. Give the case of the adjectives in the first three sentences of section **99** and explain the reason for each. 6. What is the meaning of the English word *benign?* 7. What word derived from **multus** have you seen in your arithmetic?

---

[1] See section **24**.

LESSON XVII

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (Continued) THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"

SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN *-ER*

101. Some adjectives of the first and second declension have the masculine ending in **-er.** They are declined as follows:

(1) **miser, -a, -um,** *unhappy*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	miser	misera	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserae	miserī
DAT.	miserō	miserae	miserō
ACC.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserō	miserā	miserō

Plural

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	miserī	miserae	misera
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
ACC.	miserōs	miserās	misera
ABL.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

(2) **pulcher, -chra, -chrum,** *beautiful*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
ACC.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
ABL.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
GEN.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchōrum
DAT.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
ACC.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
ABL.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

a. The only difference between the declension of the two words given above is that **miser** keeps the letter **e** of the ending **-er** in all its forms, while **pulcher** drops **e** in all its forms after the nominative of the masculine singular. In the vocabularies, when a new adjective in **-er** is given, the ending of the feminine and neuter nominative will be given, as well as the masculine, and this will show whether the adjective is declined like **miser** or like **pulcher.**

THE EXPLETIVE *THERE*

102. The English adverb *there* has two uses which are quite ifferent. Sometimes it means *in that place,* as in the sentence, *'e lived there two years.* But sometimes it merely serves to itroduce a sentence, without expressing any idea of place, as in ıe sentence, *There is no danger.* This sentence simply means, *Vo danger exists,* and *there* does not add anything to its meaning. ı this use, *there* is said to be an Expletive, and while Latin as a word for *there* in the meaning of *in that place,* it has no word ır *there* as an expletive. The sentence, *There is no danger,* ill be translated into Latin as if it were simply, *No danger is.* ı the same manner, the sentence *There seemed to be some diffi-ılty,* will be translated as if it read, *Some difficulty seemed to be.* In translating from Latin into English, the expletive *there* ıust be supplied whenever the meaning of the sentence ·quires it. Often the forms of the verb **sum** stand first in the ·ntence when the English equivalent would use *there.* Thus, **ınt silvae in īnsulā,** *there are forests on the island.*

103. VOCABULARY

līber, lībera, līberum, free
miser, misera, miserum, unhappy
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful
sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

liberal liberty miserable sacred

a. In **liber,** *book,* the vowel of the first syllable is short, while in **līber,** *free,* it is long.

EXERCISES

104. 1. Puerī miserī sunt. 2. Fēmina est pulchra. 3. Est templum sacrum in silvā. 4. Sunt multī equī in īnsulā. 5. Servī nōn līberī sunt. 6. Fēmina misera in templō est. 7. Fīlia dominī nōn est pulchra. 8. In templō sacrō stātis. 9. Fīlia virī librum bonum portat. 10. Equōs bonōs amō. 11. Puer amīcus bonus virī est. 12. Puer amīcus virī bonī est.

105. 1. There is danger in the forest. 2. The woman is free. 3. The temples are sacred. 4. The islands are beautiful. 5. The unhappy man lives on a beautiful island. 6. The beautiful rose is pleasing to the woman. 7. There is a large forest on the island.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **servus miser.** 2. Explain the difference between the declension of **miser** and **pulcher.** 3. What are the two uses of the English word *there?* 4. Form sentences illustrating each of these two uses. 5. Decline **līber.** 6. How is the word for *book* distinguished from the adjective meaning *free?* 7. Change the subjects of sentences 2 and 3 of section **104** to the plural, making such other changes as are required by the rules of agreement. 8. From what Latin words are *librarian* and *liberal* derived?

VIEW OF THE ROMAN FORUM

LESSON XVIII

DECLENSION OF POSSESSIVES: FIRST DECLENSION MASCULINE NOUNS

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

106. The Latin words which mean *my*, *your*, and *our* are adjectives and are made to agree in gender, number, and case with the word denoting the thing possessed. Thus, **rosa *mea***, *my rose*, **liber *meus***, *my book*, **cōnsilium *meum***, *my plan*. They are declined throughout like the adjectives which have been given in sections **92** and **101**.

TUUS AND *VESTER*

107. There are two words for *your*, a different word being used when one person is addressed from that which is used when more than one person is meant. Thus, in speaking to a father or mother we should say, **fīlia tua**, *your daughter*, but in speaking to the father and mother together we should say, **fīlia vestra.** In like manner, **victōria tua**, *your victory*, will be said to one person, and **victōria vestra** to two or more persons who have together won a victory.

Similarly, in older English *thy* and *thine* were used when one person was meant, and *your* when more than one was meant. But in modern times, *your* has come to be used for both singular and plural. Modern European languages still have different words for the singular and the plural meanings of *your*, but their use is not quite the same as the use of **tuus** and **vester** in Latin.

MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

108. It has already been stated (section **54**) that almost all nouns of the first declension are feminine, even though they refer to things without life, as for example, **rosa, silva, victōria.** But there are a few nouns in this declension which from their

meaning naturally denote men, and these are masculine. The word **nauta,** which has already been given, is of this class, and also the words **agricola,** *farmer,* and **poēta,** *poet.* No other masculine nouns of the first declension are given in this book.

The adjectives used with these nouns will, of course, be masculine, and hence the adjectives and nouns will have different endings. The phrase meaning *the good sailor* is declined as follows;

nauta bonus, *the good sailor*

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	nauta bonus	nautae bonī
GEN.	nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
DAT.	nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
ACC.	nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
ABL.	nautā bonō	nautīs bonīs

109. VOCABULARY

agricola, -ae, M., farmer
meus, mea, meum, my
noster, nostra, nostrum, our
poēta, -ae, M., poet
tuus, tua, tuum, your
vester, vestra, vestrum, your

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

agriculture (*see also* **ager**) poet poetry

EXERCISES

110. 1. Agricola benignus puerum laudat. 2. Amīcus meus poētam amat. 3. Fīlia tua in viā stat. 4. Cōnsilium vestrum nōn bonum est. 5. Amīcus noster benignus est. 6. Amīcus tuus poētam bonum laudat. 7. Multī agricolae equōs vestrōs laudant. 8. Servus librōs meōs portat. 9. Fīliae tuae cum fīliā agricolae ambulant.

111. 1. My horse is in the field. 2. Our books are good. 3. The poet praises your (*said to one person*) rose. 4. The

good sailor gives the boy a letter. 5. Your (*said to more than one person*) friend loves the kind farmer. 6. The poet walks in the forest with the master.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What determines the gender, number, and case of the Latin words for *my*, *your*, and *our*? 2. Decline **meus**. 3. What is the difference between the use of **tuus** and **vester**? 4. What is the word which corresponds to **tuus** in older English? Find an example in some book which you have read. 5. Decline the words for *the unhappy poet*. 6. Decline the words which mean *our friend*.

LESSON XIX

APPOSITIVES: CONJUNCTIONS

APPOSITION

112. Sometimes two nouns, or a pronoun and a noun, denoting the same person or thing are put side by side, without a verb being used to connect them. The second is used to explain the first by making known some fact or by telling more definitely who or what is meant. Thus, *A boy, a friend of my brother, is visiting at my home.* The word *friend* denotes the same person as *boy*, and serves to make known a fact regarding the boy. A noun used in this way is called an Appositive, and is said to be in Apposition with the word which it explains. In the sentence above, *friend* is in apposition with *boy*.

CASE OF APPOSITIVES

113. A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the word which it explains. Thus, in the sentence *I gave the book to Mary, your sister*, the word *sister* is in apposition with Mary, and would stand in the dative case in Latin, because *Mary* would stand in the dative as an indirect object.

COÖRDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

114. The conjunctions *and, but,* and *or* are called Coördinating Conjunctions. They join parts of sentences which are alike in their grammatical use. Thus, *Africa and Australia are continents. He has a book but he is not reading.*

SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

115. Such words as *because, if, although* are called Subordinating Conjunctions. They join subordinate clauses to principal clauses in complex sentences. Thus, *I enjoyed the story because it was interesting.*

116. VOCABULARY

accūsō, -āre, reproach, blame, censure
et, *conj.*, and
fīlius, -ī, M., son
labōrō, -āre, work
quod, *conj.*, because
sed, *conj.*, but

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

accuse
accusation
filial
labor

EXERCISES

117. 1. Fīlium tuum accūsō, quod nōn labōrat. 2. Puer, fīlius dominī, in agrō labōrat. 3. Agricola, vir benignus, puerōs laudat. 4. Fēmina puerum, fīlium miserum nautae, amat. 5. In magnā silvā ambulō. 6. Equus est magnus, sed nōn est pulcher. 7. Fīlius et fīlia agricolae labōrant. 8. Fīlia poētae nōn labōrat et misera est.

118. 1. Your master, the farmer, loves good horses. 2. The horses of your master, the farmer, are good. 3. The slave loves (his[1]) master, the farmer. 4. We blame the boys because they do not work. 5. The woman blames your daughter, but she praises your son.

---

[1] Omit.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Explain what is meant by *apposition*. 2. What is a noun in apposition called? 3. What is the rule for the case of appositives? 4. Form an English sentence containing an appositive. 5. What are the two classes of conjunctions? 6. Conjugate **labōrō** in the present indicative active. 7. What kind of task is a *laborious* task?

LESSON XX

DEMONSTRATIVES: DECLENSION OF *HIC*

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

119. The words *this* and *that* show what person or thing is meant without telling any quality: *this book*, *that picture*. Such words are called Demonstratives. The plural of *this* is *these*, the plural of *that* is *those*. Demonstratives in Latin are declined, and agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns which they modify. They have certain uses as pronouns which will be explained later.

DECLENSION OF *HIC*

120. The demonstrative adjective **hic**, *this*, points out a person or thing near at hand. It is declined as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

POSITION OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

121. The Latin demonstratives regularly stand before the words which they modify, just as adjectives of size, quantity, and extent do.

122. VOCABULARY

errō, -āre, wander
folium, -ī, N., leaf
hic, haec, hoc, this
longus, -a, -um, long
oppidum, -ī, N., town
puella, -ae, F., girl

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

error folio foliage long

EXERCISES

123. 1. Hic puer in magnō oppidō habitat. 2. Haec puella in silvā errāre amat. 3. Fīlius hujus fēminae in agrō labōrat. 4. Amīcus meus huic puellae librum dat. 5. Hī virī magnum poētam laudant. 6. In hāc silvā sunt multa folia. 7. Haec folia pulchra sunt. 8. Viae hōrum oppidōrum sunt longae. 9. Haec puella, fīlia dominī, librōs amat. 10. Amīcus meus, fīlius nautae, in hōc oppidō habitat.

124. 1. This girl and this boy live in the town. 2. The friends of this man are my friends. 3. These fields are long, but they are not wide. 4. I love to wander in this forest. 5. This leaf is not beautiful. 6. My friend, the sailor, does not live in the town.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What are demonstratives? 2. What is the plural of *this?* of *that?* 3. What is regularly the position of demonstratives? 4. Decline together the words for *this boy;* for *this sailor.* 5. Point out two appositives in the sentences of section **123.** 6. Point out a coördinating conjunction in the sentences of section **124.** 7. At the end of a book a list of *errata* is sometimes found. What are they?

PART OF ANCIENT AMPHITHEATER

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

125. (1) The second declension of nouns.
(2) Gender in the first and second declensions.
(3) Position of the verb.
(4) Position of the genitive.
(5) Position of the dative.
(6) Predicate nouns and adjectives.
(7) The conjugation of **sum** in the present indicative.
(8) The agreement of adjectives.
(9) Adjectives of the first and second declension.
(10) Position of adherent adjectives.
(11) Possessive adjectives.
(12) Apposition.
(13) Demonstratives.
(14) Declension of **hic.**

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

126. Define the following English words and give Latin words with which they are connected in derivation:

accuse	feminine	miserable
agriculture	filial	multiply
amble	foliage	peril
amiable	gratify	poet
amicable	habitation	puerile
avarice	insulation	sacred
belligerent	labor	servant
benign	latitude	station
counsel	liberal	temple
dominate	library	verbal
equestrian	long	virile
error	magnify	

LESSON XXI

THE PROGRESSIVE FORM: THE PASSIVE VOICE: THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ*

THE PROGRESSIVE FORM OF THE VERB IN ENGLISH

127. The two sentences, *The boy works* and *The boy is working* both represent the subject, *boy*, as doing the act which the verb expresses, and they both represent the act as taking place in the present time. The only difference is that the second sentence makes distinct reference to the action as continuing or in progress, while the first merely mentions the act. Such verbs as *is working* are sometimes said to be in the Progressive Form.

TWO TRANSLATIONS OF LATIN VERB FORMS

128. Latin verbs have no separate form which corresponds to the English progressive form. The verb **labōrat** may be translated *works* or *is working* as the sense of the sentence requires. Each form in the conjugation of a verb may have two different translations in English. The present tense of **portō** may be translated *I carry* or *I am carrying*, *you carry* or *you are carrying*, *he carries* or *he is carrying*, etc.

THE PASSIVE VOICE

129. A verb in the passive voice represents an act done by some one else than the subject of the sentence, as we have seen (page xxix). Thus, *Many soldiers were killed by the enemy.* Care must be taken not to confuse the English passive voice with the progressive form of the active. *They are hearing*, is active, *They are heard*, is passive. In the first of these sentences, the subject, *They*, denotes the persons who do the act expressed by the verb. In the second, the act is done by some other person than the subject of the sentence.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ*

130. The verb **portō** is conjugated in the present indicative passive as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
portor, *I am carried*	portāmur, *we are carried*
portāris,[1] *you are carried*	portāminī, *you are carried*
portātur, *he, she, it is carried*	portantur, *they are carried*

a. These forms may also be translated by the progressive forms: *I am being carried, you are being carried, he is being carried*, etc:

PERSONAL ENDINGS

131. The personal endings used in the passive are as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
-or (**-r**), *I*	**-mur**, *we*
-ris, *you*	**-minī**, *you*
-tur, *he, she, it*	**-ntur**, *they*

a. In the first conjugation, the characteristic vowel **-ā** becomes short before **-ntur**, and it disappears before **-or**.

132. VOCABULARY

aedificō, -āre, build
carrus, -ī, M., cart
dēmōnstrō, -āre, point out, show

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

edifice demonstrate demonstrative

EXERCISES

133. 1. Puerī accūsantur. 2. Perīculum hujus bellī dēmōnstrātur. 3. Magnum templum in hōc oppidō aedificātur. 4. Laudāmur; accūsāminī; amantur. 5. Librōs portat. 6. Librī portantur. 7. Haec epistula longa est. 8. Hae puellae nōn accūsantur. 9. Fēmina huic puerō carrum dat.

[1] There is also a form of the second person singular ending in **-re**. It is not used in the exercises of this book.

134. 1. We are building a temple. 2. A temple is being built. 3. The poet is praised. 4. These boys are loved. 5. This town is praised. 6. These men point out the dangers of war. 7. These sailors are not working.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Translate in two different ways each of the following: **ambulō, errāmus, laudat, stant, habitās.** 2. Form two English sentences, one containing a verb in the progressive form in the active voice, the other containing a verb in the passive voice. 3. Conjugate **laudō** in the present indicative passive. 4. Translate **laudātur** in two different ways (see section **130** *a.*) 5. What was a *porter* originally employed to do?

LESSON XXII

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT: ABLATIVE OF AGENT

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

135. The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act. This is called the Ablative of Accompaniment.

***Cum amicō* ambulō,** *I am walking with a friend.*

a. The ablative of accompaniment also denotes the person with whom one is contending, in such sentences as *The Romans waged war with the Germans.*

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

136. With a passive verb the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab.** This is called the Ablative of Agent.

Puer *ab amicō* accūsātur, *the boy is censured by his friend.*

a. Three facts are true of an ablative of agent. (1) It is used only with a passive verb. (2) It always has the preposition **ā** or **ab.** (3) It denotes a person.

137. VOCABULARY

causa, -ae, F., cause, reason
culpa, -ae, F., fault
mūtō, -āre, change
nāsus, -ī, M., nose
numerus, -ī, M., number
properō, -āre, hasten
semper, *adv.*, always

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

cause culpable mutable nasal numerous
causal numerical

EXERCISES

138. 1. Puer ab amīcō meō laudātur quod semper labōrat. 2. Puella magnum numerum rosārum portat. 3. Cōnsilium nostrum mūtātur. 4. Puella ā fēminā accūsātur quod in silvā cum fīliā tuā ambulat. 5. Ab amīcīs accūsor quod nōn properō, sed culpa nōn mea est. 6. Nāsus hujus virī longus est. 7. Templum in īnsulā ā servīs aedificātur. 8. Hae silvae a multīs poētīs laudantur. 9. Sunt multae causae perīculī in hōc oppidō. 10. Fīlius tuus cum amīcō meō in oppidō habitat.

139. 1. The poet is walking in the field with the farmer. 2. The boy is censured by your friend, but the fault is mine. 3. There are many causes of this war. 4. The slave is walking with the sailors. 5. This temple is always praised by poets. 6. The slave hastens because he is carrying a letter.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What are three points which distinguish the ablative of agent? 2. What preposition may be found with the ablative of accompaniment? 3. Point out all the occurrences of the ablative of agent in section **138**; of the ablative of accompaniment. 4. Point out a verb in the progressive form of the active voice in section **139**. 5. Point out all the passive verbs in section **138**. 6. Give two English words which differ from their Latin equivalents only in having final *e* instead of final *a*.

LESSON XXIII

DECLENSION AND USE OF *ILLE* AND *IPSE*

DECLENSION OF *ILLE*

140. The demonstrative **ille,** *that,* points out a person or thing at some distance from the speaker in place, time, or thought. It is declined as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

DECLENSION OF *IPSE*

141. The pronoun **ipse** is called an Intensive Pronoun. Like the demonstratives, it is declined to show gender, number, and case. Its forms are translated *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself,* plural *ourselves, yourselves, themselves.* They are used to emphasize the pronoun or noun with which they agree. Thus, *My brother himself told me.*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

a. The only difference between the declension of **ille** and **ipse** is that the neuter nominative and accusative singular of **ille** ends in **-ud,** while the corresponding forms of **ipse** end in **-um.**

THE ROMANCE ARTICLE

142. The words meaning *the* in French, Spanish, and Italian are derived from **ille.** They are, in the masculine, *le* in French, *el* in Spanish, and *il* or *lo* in Italian.

143. VOCABULARY

barbarus, -ī, M., barbarian
ille, illa, illud, that
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself; *pl.*, themselves
oppidānī,[1] **-ōrum,** M. *pl.*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town
parvus, -a, -um, small
pugnō, -āre, fight
vīcus, -ī, M., village

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

barbarous barbarian pugnacious

EXERCISES

144. 1. Illa puella in magnā īnsulā habitat. 2. Oppidānī ipsī cum barbarīs pugnant. 3. Ille vīcus parvus est. 4. Fīlius illīus fēminae nauta est. 5. Fīlia hujus virī est puella bona. 6. Puella illī fēminae epistulam nōn dat. 7. Ab ipsō dominō servus laudātur. 8. Illī nautae in parvō vīcō habitant. 9. Puerī properant quod perīculum magnum est.

145. 1. Those barbarians live in the forests. 2. The sailors fight with those barbarians. 3. The boy himself is kind. 4. The son of that man is a poet. 5. We are censured by our friends themselves.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What kind of adjective (or pronoun) is **ille?** 2. What is the meaning of the plural forms of **ille?** 3. Decline together the words for *that village.* 4. What kind of ablative is **barbarīs** in sentence 2, section **144?** 5. Why is **puella** in sentence 5, section **144,** a nominative? 6. What is the meaning of the Latin phrase *multum in parvo?*

---

[1] There are some Latin nouns which are used only in the plural. The noun **oppidānī** is declined like the plural of **dominus.**

LESSON XXIV

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE FROM WHICH: PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

PLACE FROM WHICH WITH *Ā* OR *AB*

146. The preposition **ā** or **ab** which has been used thus far with the meaning *by* is also used to mean *from* in expressions which denote the place from which someone or something comes or goes. In the sentence *I walked from the forest to the town* the phrase *from the forest* will be translated **ā silvā.**

PLACE FROM WHICH WITH *Ē* OR *EX*

There is another preposition, **ē** or **ex,** which also means *from.* When the sense of the sentence shows that *from* really means *from within* or *from the inside of,* **ē** or **ex** is used. Thus, *They set out from the town* means that they were *in* the town when they started. Hence, **ē** or **ex** must be used. When *from* means *from near* or does not indicate that the starting point was inside the place named, **ā** or **ab** is used. Thus, *We walked from the river to the hill.* In this sentence *from* means *from near* or *from the side of,* and hence **ā** or **ab** will be used.

The object of the preposition **ē** or **ex** is in the ablative case. The form **ex** is always used before words beginning with a vowel or *h,* and sometimes before words beginning with a consonant. The form **ē** is used only before words beginning with a consonant.

ADDITIONAL PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

147. In addition to the prepositions **ab, ex, cum,** and **in** which have been given, there are a few others which also govern the ablative. Two of these are **sine,** *without,* and **prō,** *in front of.* Sometimes **prō** is also used to mean *for* in the sense of *on behalf of* or *for the sake of.* Thus, **Prō patriā pugnās,** *you fight for your country.*

148. VOCABULARY

aquila, -ae, F., eagle
campus, -ī, M., plain
ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from, from within, out of
patria, -ae, F., native country, country
prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of; for, on behalf of, for the sake of
saepe, *adv.*, often
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
volō, -āre, fly

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

aquiline camp campus patriotic

EXERCISES

149. 1. Aquila ex magnā silvā volat. 2. Sunt multī parvī vīcī in hīs campīs. 3. Puer ā templō cum amīcō ambulat. 4. Hī virī laudantur quod prō patriā pugnant. 5. Magna aquila ā templō volat. 6. In campō prō oppidō saepe ambulāmus. 7. Hic puer sine amīcīs miser est. 8. Hic poēta nōn sine causā ā multīs virīs et fēminīs laudātur. 9. Illud oppidum in magnō perīculō est. 10. Puerī ex oppidō properant.

150. 1. The boys hasten from the street. 2. This slave always works, but he is not often praised. 3. The man is standing in front of the temple. 4. We often walk in the forest without danger. 5. We fight for our country because we love our country.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Name all the Latin prepositions used thus far with the ablative. 2. What are two different meanings of **ab**? 3. Decline together the words for *that eagle;* for *this plain.* 4. Explain the difference between the use of **ā** (**ab**) and of **ē** (**ex**) in expressions of place from which. 5. Give the genitive singular of **illud oppidum.** 6. What is the meaning of *volatile?*

ROMAN WALL PAINTING

LESSON XXV

THE SECOND CONJUGATION

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

151. The termination of the present active infinitive in the second conjugation is **-ēre,** and the characteristic vowel is ē. Verbs of this conjugation form the present tense like **moneō,** *warn,* of which the present active infinitive is **monēre** and the present stem is **monē-.**

152. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *MONEŌ*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	*Singular*
moneō, *I warn, am warning*	moneor, *I am warned*
monēs, *you warn,* etc.	monēris, *you are warned*
monet, *he, she, it warns,* etc.	monētur, *he, she, it is warned*
Plural	*Plural*
monēmus, *we warn*	monēmur, *we are warned*
monētis, *you warn*	monēminī, *you are warned*
monent, *they warn*	monentur, *they are warned*

a. The use of the personal endings is the same as in the first conjugation, but the characteristic vowel ē (becoming short) is retained before **-ō** and **-or** in the first person singular, while the characteristic ā of the first conjugation disappears before these endings. The characteristic vowel becomes short before **-t, -nt,** and **-ntur,** as in the first conjugation. Before these personal endings, and also before the personal endings **-ō** and **-or,** the vowel is short in all verbs.

153. VOCABULARY

aequus, -a, -um, level, even
arma, armōrum, N. *pl.,* arms, weapons
castra, castrōrum, N. *pl.,* camp
habeō, -ēre, have
moneō, -ēre, warn, advise
videō, -ēre, see

a. The nouns **arma** and **castra** are used only in the plural. They are declined like the plural of **templum.** When **castra** is used as subject, it has a plural verb, even though the English translation is in the singular. When it is modified by an adjective, the adjective is in the plural.

Castra *nostra* ex oppidō *videntur*, *our camp is seen from the town.*

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

equal[1]	armor	admonition
equable	arms	monitor
equation		

EXERCISES

154. 1. Agricola saepe hōs puerōs monet. 2. Puerī saepe ab llō agricolā monentur. 3. Magnam aquilam in silvā vidēmus. . Castra in aequō campō sunt. 5. Perīculum oppidī magnum st, sed oppidānī arma bona habent. 6. Fīlius agricolae in astrīs cum amīcō est. 7. Illī virī sine armīs prō castrīs stant. . Patria nostra multōs campōs et multa oppida habet. . Haec īnsula ā nautīs saepe vidētur.

155. 1. I am often warned by my friends. 2. The beautiful orest is seen by the poet. 3. The boy is hurrying from the amp. 4. That girl has many books. 5. The camp of the arbarians is in the large plain.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the endings of the present active infinitive in the first and second onjugations. 2. Decline the words for *a large camp.* 3. What letter epresents the Latin diphthong *ae* in English derivatives from Latin? Give the personal endings of the passive voice. 5. Give the case of **oppidī** and **oppidānī** in sentence 5, section **154.** 6. What two Latin words an you trace in *provide?*

---

[1]The diphthong **ae** regularly becomes *e* in English derivatives, as in *equal, equable,* etc.

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

156. VOCABULARY REVIEW

agricola, -ae, M.
aquila, -ae, F.
arma, -ōrum, N.
barbarus, -ī, M.
campus, -ī, M.
carrus, -ī, M.
castra, -ōrum, N.
causa, -ae, F.
culpa, -ae, F.
fīlius, -ī, M.
folium, -ī, N.
nāsus, -ī, M.
numerus, -ī, M.
oppidānī, -ōrum, M.
oppidum, -ī, N.
patria, -ae, F.
poēta, -ae, M.
puella, -ae, F.
vīcus, -ī, M.
aequus, -a, -um
benignus, -a, -um
grātus, -a, -um
hic, haec, hoc
ille, illa, illud
ipse, ipsa, ipsum
lātus, -a, -um
līber, lībera, līberum
longus, -a, -um
meus, mea, meum
miser, misera, miserum
multus, -a, -um
noster, -tra, -trum
parvus, -a, -um
pulcher, -chra, -chrum
sacer, -cra, -crum
tuus, tua, tuum
vester, -tra, -trum
accūsō, -āre
aedificō, -āre
dēmōnstrō, -āre
errō, -āre
habeō, -ēre
labōrō, -āre
moneō, -ēre
mūtō, -āre
properō, -āre
pugnō, -āre
videō, -ēre
volō, -āre
saepe
semper
ē, ex
prō
sine
et
quod
sed

LESSON XXVI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

USE OF *IS* AS AN ADJECTIVE

7. In addition to the demonstratives **hic** and **ille,** there third demonstrative, **is,** translated *this* or *that,* as the ɜ of the sentence in which it stands may require. It does ɜmphasize the idea that the thing to which it refers is near, ɔes **hic,** or that it is remote, as does **ille.** Usually it refers mething which has been recently mentioned.

	Singular			*Plural*	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

***Is* ager,** *this* (or *that*) *field.*
Amīcus *ejus* puerī, *the friend of this* (or *that*) *boy.*
In *eā* īnsulā, *on this* (or *that*) *island.*

USE OF *IS* AS A PRONOUN

8. In the examples which have been given above the forms have been used in agreement with nouns. When used in way **is** is a demonstrative adjective. But sometimes the ıs of **is** are used without nouns. They are then personal ıouns of the third person and are translated *he, she, it* (geni- *his, her, hers, its,* or *of him, of her, of it,* accusative *him, her,* tc.), plural *they* (genitive *their, theirs* or *of them,* accusative) according to the gender and number of the antecedent.

***Eum* vidēbam,** *I saw him.*
Amīcus *ejus* benignus est, *his* (or *her*) *friend is kind.*
***Eī* multa dōna dās,** *you give him* (or *her*) *many gifts.*
Perīculum *eōrum* magnum est, *their danger is great.*

159. **VOCABULARY**

barba, -ae, F., beard
clārus, -a, -um, famous, distinguished; clear
dōnum, -ī, N., gift
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely
is, ea, id, this, that; *as pron.*, he, she, it
pictūra, -ae, F., picture
timeō, -ēre, fear

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

barber clarity donation picture timid

EXERCISES

160. 1. Is puer est amīcus meus. 2. Ea pictūra pulchra saepe laudātur. 3. Servus nōn labōrat et dominus eum accūsat. 4. Quod fīlia nautae semper benigna est, eam amīcī nostrī amant. 5. Hae fēminae timent quod fīliae in perīculō sunt. 6. Fēmina saepe hīs puerīs dōna dat, et ab eīs amātur. 7. Hī virī prō patriā fortiter pugnant, et eōs laudāmus. 8. Quod hic puer semper bonus est, amīcus clārus meus eī dōnum dat. 9. Hic agricola barbam longam habet.

161. 1. This poet is a distinguished man and his books are praised. 2. The boys and girls love him because he is kind. 3. Their friends live in the small town. 4. The boy gives him a letter.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out those forms of **is** which are used as adjectives and those which are used as pronouns in section **160.** 2. Explain the case of **puerīs** and of **eīs** in sentence 6, section **160.** 3. Decline together **id dōnum.** 4. Give the genitive singular of the three demonstratives **hic, ille, is.** 5. Give the accusative singular of the phrase **poēta clārus.** 6. What English verb is connected in derivation with **dōnum?**

LESSON XXVII

ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

THE OBJECTS OF PREPOSITIONS

2. All prepositions which have been used thus far have objects in the ablative. But there are many prepositions h have their objects in the accusative. Almost all the ositions which are to be given from this point on in this. take the accusative as object.

PLACE TO WHICH

3. We have seen that English phrases with *to* which are valent to the indirect object or which are used to modify in adjectives are translated by the dative, and that *to* in phrases is not translated by a Latin preposition. But the phrase with *to* denotes the place to or toward which one or something moves, the preposition **ad** or **in** is used, its object in the accusative case. *I walk to the forest* is ***ilvam* ambulō.**

THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH *IN*

4. With its object in the ablative, **in** means *in* or *on.* its object in the accusative it commonly means *into.* , **Puer *in silvā* ambulat,** *the boy walks in the forest;* **Puer *in m* ambulat,** *the boy walks into the forest.*

5. VOCABULARY

rep. with acc., to, toward
, *prep. with acc.*, before, front of
ep. with acc., into

juvō, juvāre, help
per, *prep. with acc.*, through
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of

EXERCISES

6. 1. Aquila ad silvam volat. 2. Est magnus campus oppidum. 3. Vir in oppidum properat. 4. Puer in

perīculō est, sed ab amīcīs juvātur. 5. Propter verba tua perīculum timēmus. 6. Arma per viās ā puerīs portantur. 7. Ex oppidō ad castra properāmus. 8. Eum juvāmus quod semper benignus est. 9. Eōs timēmus quod barbarī sunt. 10. Fēmina timet quod puerī in silvā errant. 11. Fīlius tuus in silvam properat.

167. 1. The temple is in front of the town. 2. The boy and his friend walk into the forest. 3. We do not often walk in the forest. 4. The girls carry roses through the streets of the town. 5. Many women are unhappy on account of this war.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What two cases are used with prepositions in Latin? 2. What case is used as the object of prepositions in phrases denoting *place from which?* in phrases denoting *place to which?* 3. When are phrases with *to* translated by the dative? 4. Explain the difference between the use of in with the accusative and with the ablative. 5. What are some English words in which the Latin preposition ante is found?

LESSON XXVIII

LATIN TENSES: IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

TENSE IN THE INDICATIVE

168. The Latin verb, like the English verb, has six tenses in the indicative. In English the tense names are present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. In Latin the tense names are present, imperfect, future, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. The imperfect and the perfect are not quite the same in meaning as the two English tenses whose places they hold, that is, the past and the present perfect.

THE IMPERFECT

169. The Latin imperfect tense is usually equivalent to the progressive form of the past tense in English, that is, it represents an act as going on in past time. Thus, *I was working,*

labōrābam; *They were fearing,* **timēbant.** Sometimes it is used to denote an act which happened repeatedly or was a customary thing. Thus, in the sentence *The boys wandered in the forest,* if the meaning is *were in the habit of wandering in the forest* the verb will be **errābant.**

a. Occasionally we use the simple form of the English past tense to denote an act or situation which was continuing at some past time. Thus, *I was happy because I had many friends.* The verb *had* here denotes a situation which existed at the time of the main verb, *was,* and so would be represented in Latin by the imperfect. The Latin imperfect therefore will occasionally be translated by the simple past tense of the corresponding English verb.

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

170. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the imperfect indicative active.

Singular

portābam, *I was carrying* or *I carried*
portābās, *you were carrying, you carried*
portābat, *he, she, it was carrying, he carried,* etc.

Plural

portābāmus, *we were carrying, we carried*
portābātis, *you were carrying, you carried*
portābant, *they were carrying, they carried*

Singular

monēbam, *I was warning* or *I warned*
monēbās, *you were warning, you warned*
monēbat, *he, she, it was warning,* etc.

Plural

monēbāmus, *we were warning,* etc.
monēbātis, *you were warning,* etc.
monēbant, *they were warning,* etc.

THE TENSE SIGN

171. In the imperfect the syllable **bā** stands between the present stem and the personal endings. This is called the Tense Sign of the imperfect. The personal endings are the same as in the present except that the first person singular ends in **-m.**

172. VOCABULARY

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly
maneō, -ēre, remain
moveō, -ēre, move
nihil, *indeclinable,* N., nothing
nūntius, -ī, M., messenger
post, *prep. w. acc.*, behind, after

a. **Nihil** is used only in the nominative and accusative.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

move movement nihilist postpone

EXERCISES

173. 1. Nūntius epistulam ad castra portābat. 2. In viā post templum cum puerō ambulābam. 3. Puerī cum agricolā in agrīs labōrābant. 4. Nihil timēbāmus quod arma bona habēbāmus. 5. Dominus servōs monēbat. 6. Servī dominum magnopere timent. 7. In oppidō cum amīcō manēbam. 8. Barbarī castra movēbant. 9. Fīlius agricolae in illō oppidō habitābat. 10. Virī et fēminae in viā stābant.

174. 1. The townspeople were moving the gold from the temple, because they feared (were fearing) the barbarians. 2. Our friends are praising the famous poet. 3. We did not greatly fear the dangers of war. 4. After the war, we saw (were seeing) their plans. 5. I was standing in the forest with your son.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Name the tenses of the English verb in the indicative. 2. Name the tenses of the Latin verb in the indicative. 3. Explain the use of the Latin imperfect. 4. What is the tense sign of the imperfect indicative? 5. Point out the present stem, the tense sign, and the personal ending in the verb of sentence 2, section **173.** 6. What is the meaning of *annihilate?*

LESSON XXIX

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE: INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

175. The words *who, which,* and *what* are frequently used in estions as pronouns. Thus, *Who is the man? Which do you efer? What did you see? Which* and *what* are also used as jectives, directly connected with nouns. Thus, *Which man s elected? What house is that?* In the last two sentences, *ich* and *what* are adjectives, agreeing with *man* and *house.*

DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

176.

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
	Singular	
quis *or* quī	quae	quid *or* quod
cujus	cujus	cujus
cui	cui	cui
quem	quam	quid (quod)
quō	quā	quō
	Plural	
quī	quae	quae
quōrum	quārum	quōrum
quibus	quibus	quibus
quōs	quās	quae
quibus	quibus	quibus

a. The forms **quis** and **quid** in the nominative singular are pronouns, the forms **quī** and **quod** are adjectives. Sometimes **quis** is also used as an adjective.

b. The forms of the pronoun which stand in the first column (**quis,** etc.) are sometimes feminine. The forms of the feminine singular are used only as adjectives.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

177. In English we often use the word *do* or *does* (past tense *did*) in questions, as well as in negative expressions (see section **57**). Thus, *What do you see? When did he come?* In Latin such questions have no word corresponding to this use of *do*. The Latin equivalents of the sentences given above would read as if the questions were *What see you? When came he?* In translating Latin questions into English a form of *do* must be supplied whenever it is needed for correct English. Thus **Quem laudās** is translated *Whom do you praise?*

178. VOCABULARY

fābula, -ae, F., story, tale
Germānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Germans
nunc, *adv.*, now
quis (**quī**), **quae, quid** (**quod**), who, which, what
Rōmānus, -ī, a Roman; *pl.*, the Romans
tum, *adv.*, then, at that time, thereupon
vērus, -a, -um, true

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

fable — German — Roman — veracious
fabulous

EXERCISES

179. 1. Quis tum in campō ambulābat? 2. Quid in hōc agrō nunc timēs? 3. Cujus fīlius est hic puer? 4. Quī puerī cum fēminā in viā stābant? 5. Quae puella librum habet? 6. Haec fābula nōn vēra est. 7. Cui hae fābulae nōn grātae sunt? 8. Quis tum bellum timēbat? 9. Rōmānī saepe cum Germānīs pugnābant. 10. Quem dominus tum monēbat? 11. Servus nōn labōrābat et dominus eum accūsābat.

180. 1. Who is your friend? 2. Whose book have you? 3. By whom (*singular*) is the letter carried? 4. To whom (*plural*) do you give the weapons? 5. In what town does your friend live?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out the interrogative pronouns in section **179**; the interrogative adjectives. 2. Conjugate the verbs of sentences 4 and 5, section **179**, in the tenses and the voice and mood in which they occur. 3. Give the genitive singular of the words **quae puella.** 4. Explain the difference between the forms **quid** and **quod** as interrogatives. 5. Point out the subject and the object in sentence 10, section **179.** 6. What is the meaning of the adverb *verily?*

LESSON XXX

IMPERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: IMPERFECT OF *SUM*

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

181. The imperfect passive differs from the imperfect active only in personal endings. The endings are the same as in the present passive, except that in the first person singular **-r** is used instead of **-or.**

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

182. Verbs of the first and second conjugations are conjugated as follows in the imperfect of the indicative mood, passive voice.

Singular	*Singular*
portābar, *I was being carried* or *I was carried*	monēbar
portābāris, *you were being carried,* etc.	monēbāris
portābātur, *he was being carried,* etc.	monēbātur
Plural	*Plural*
portābāmur, *we were being carried,* etc.	monēbāmur
portābāminī, *you were being carried,* etc.	monēbāminī
portābantur, *they were being carried,* etc.	monēbantur

a. The **ā** of the tense sign becomes short before the endings **-r** and **-ntur.** In the active, as we have seen the **ā** becomes short before **-m -t** and **-nt.**

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

183. The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the imperfect indicative:

Singular	*Plural*
eram, *I was*	erāmus, *we were*
erās, *you were*	erātis, *you were*
erat, *he, she, it was*	erant, *they were*

a. It must be remembered that with the verb **sum,** which expresses merely *existence,* there is no such idea as active and passive involved, and hence there is only one set of forms. They have the personal endings of the active voice.

b. The use of the forms of the verb *to be* when followed by a predicate adjective or noun must be distinguished from their use in making the progressive form of verbs. Thus, the sentence *I was free* requires a form of **sum,** while the sentences *I was praising* and *I was (being) praised* do not, because the expressions *was praising* and *was (being) praised* denote actions and are rendered by forms of the verb **laudō.**

184. VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, narrow
aqua, -ae, F., water
Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul
locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** N.), place
nātūra, -ae, F., nature
pugna, -ae, F., fight, battle
superō, -āre, defeat, overcome

a. The noun **locus** has also a masculine plural, **locī,** but in the meaning *places* or *regions* the neuter **loca** is regularly used. In the singular **locus** is always masculine.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

aqueduct	location	Gallic	nature
aquatic	locate		natural

EXERCISE

185. 1. Tum superābāmur quod arma bona nōn habēbāmus. 2. Puerī monēbantur quod in perīculō erant. 3. Rōmānī castra ex eō locō movēbant quod aqua nōn bona erat. 4. Fēminae ex hōc locō pugnam vidēbant. 5. Arma ā puerīs per viās portābantur. 6. Rōmānī cum Germānīs in Galliā pugnābant. 7. Tum bellum nōn timēbātur quod perīculum non vidēbātur. 8. Rōmānī ā barbarīs nōn juvābantur. 9. In illīs viīs angustīs carrī nōn saepe vidēbantur. 10. Propter natūram locī perīculum nōn vidēbāmus.

186. 1. We were being helped by the Romans. 2. Who were being defeated in the battle? 3. The forest was seen from the town. 4. Water was carried to the town from this place. 5. The woman was being warned because there was danger in that narrow street.

WALL OF ARDEA

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **superō** and **videō** in the imperfect indicative passive. 2. Conjugate **sum** in the present and imperfect indicative. 3. What is the difference between the gender of the singular and the plural forms of **locus?** 4. Explain the use of *there* in sentence 5, section **186.** 5. Decline the interrogative pronoun. 6. What are *insuperable* difficulties?

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

187. (1) The progressive form of the verb.
(2) The passive voice.
(3) The present indicative passive of the first conjugation.
(4) The personal endings of the passive.
(5) The ablative of accompaniment.
(6) The ablative of agent.
(7) The declension of **ille** and **ipse.**
(8) Prepositions in expressions of place from which.
(9) The present indicative of the second conjugation.
(10) The declension of **is.**
(11) The accusative with prepositions.
(12) The imperfect tense.
(13) The imperfect indicative of the first and second conjugations.
(14) The interrogative pronoun and adjective.
(15) The imperfect indicative of **sum.**

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

188. Define the following English words and give Latin words with which they are connected in derivation:

admonition	demonstrate	nasal
antecedent	denunciation	natural
aquatic	donation	nihilist
aquiline	edifice	numerous
armor	equal	picture
barbarian	fable	pugnacious
barber	Gallic	Roman
camp	German	timid
cause	location	veracious
clarify	move	
culpable	mutable	

LESSSON XXXI

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

THE USE OF *SUUS*

189. Besides the possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster,** and **vester,** which were given in section **106,** Latin has a possessive adjective of the third person, **suus sua, suum,** declined like **meus.** It is reflexive in its use that is, it regularly indicates that the subject of the sentence or the clause is the possessor.

Puer amīcōs *suōs* laudat, *the boy praises his (his own) friends.*

Puerī amīcōs *suōs* laudant, *the boys praise their (their own) friends.*

Fēmina fīliam *suam* monet, *the woman warns her daughter.*

a. The gender and number of the subject of the sentence or clause in which a form of **suus** stands determine whether the meaning is *his, her, its,* or *their.* That is, if the subject denotes a man or boy **suus** will be translated *his,* if the subject denotes a woman or girl **suus** will be translated *her,* and if the subject denotes something without life **suus** will be translated *its.* If the subject is plural **suus** will be translated *their.*

b. For emphasis or clearness, **suus** may sometimes be translated *his own, her own, its own,* or *their own.*

POSSESSIVE USE OF THE GENITIVE OF *IS*

190. If the possessor is some other person than the subject, *his, her,* or *its* is regularly expressed by **ejus,** the genitive singular of **is,** and *their* by **eōrum** or **eārum,** the genitive plural of **is.**

Amīcōs *ejus* laudant, *they praise his friends.*

Amīcōs *eōrum* laudat, *he praises their friends.*

a. The genitive forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used instead of those of **is,** to denote possession.

THE OMISSION OF POSSESSIVES

191. The possessives are often omitted in Latin if they are not emphatic or if they are not needed for the sake of clearness. They are to be supplied in translation from Latin into English whenever the sense requires.

Fēmina fīliam amat, *the woman loves her daughter.*

192. VOCABULARY

gladius, -ī, M., sword
inimīcus, -ī, M., enemy
īrātus, -a, -um, angry, angry at (*with dative*)
populus, -ī, M., people
potentia, -ae, F., power
prīmō, *adv.*, at first
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman (*as adjective*)
suus, sua, suum, his, her, its, their

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

gladiator irate population potential

EXERCISES

193. 1. Agricola equōs suōs laudābat. 2. Puerī librōs suōs habent. 3. Fēmina fīlium suum amat, sed fīliam tuam laudat. 4. Populus Rōmānus magnam potentiam tum habēbat. 5. Prīmō illī puerī inimīcī erant, nunc amīcī sunt. 6. Hunc virum laudō, sed amīcōs ejus nōn laudō. 7. Gladiōs eōrum magnopere timēbāmus. 8. Bella populī Rōmānī erant multa. 9. Quis nōn potentiam amat? 10. Rōmānī patriam magnopere amābant.

194. 1. Your daughter has her book. 2. The slaves did not see their danger. 3. These men always praise their town. 4. The farmer is working in his own field. 5. We see their swords, but we do not fear.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is meant by a reflexive possessive? 2. Give the Latin equivalent for the possessives in each of the following sentences: (*a*) I was walking with the boy and *his* brother. (*b*) The general constructed *his* camp not far from the camp of the enemy. (*c*) I do not desire *their* help. (*d*) They cannot defend *their own* homes. 3. Give the possessive adjectives of the first and second persons. 4. Decline the words for *my sword*. 5. What English word can you think of which is connected in derivation with **prīmō?**

LESSON XXXII

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

195. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the future indicative active:

Singular	*Singular*
portābō, *I shall carry*	monēbō, *I shall warn*
portābis, *you will carry*	monēbis, *you will warn*
portābit, *he will carry*	monēbit, *he will warn*
Plural	*Plural*
portābimus, *we shall carry*	monēbimus, *we shall warn*
portābitis, *you will carry*	monēbitis, *you will warn*
portābunt, *they will carry*	monēbunt, *they will warn*

a. In the future tense, as in the imperfect, the present stem is used. In the first and second conjugations there is a tense sign, **-bi-**, which becomes **-bu-** in the third person plural. In the first person singular the **i** of the tense sign disappears before **-ō.**

b. In the translation of the future tense *shall* is used in the first person, singular and plural, and *will* in the second and third persons to denote mere future action.

196. **VOCABULARY**

bēstia, -ae, F., beast
cārus, -a, -um, dear
clāmō, -āre, cry out, shout
Cornēlia, -ae, F., Cornelia (*name of a woman or girl*)
ferus, -a, -um, fierce, wild
Mārcus, -ī, M., Marcus (*name of a man or boy*)
occupō, -āre, seize
pecūnia, -ae, F., money

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

beast clamor occupy pecuniary

EXERCISES

197. 1. Hic puer pecūniam habēbit quod semper labōrat. 2. Agricola fīlium suum monēbit. 3. Illī servī aurum ex oppidō nōn portābunt. 4. Cornēlia hoc oppidum pulchrum laudābat. 5. Rōmānī illōs vīcōs Germānōrum occupābunt. 6. Mārcus clāmābat quod timēbat. 7. Timēbat quod bēstiās ferās in silvā vidēbat. 8. Patriam nostram semper amābimus. 9. Meī amīcī cārī in eō oppidō habitant.

198. 1. The girl will carry a large rose. 2. Marcus will warn the slave. 3. These men will not have money. 4. We shall seize this small town. 5. There are many wild beasts on (in) this island.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the tense sign of the future indicative in the first and second conjugations? 2. Conjugate **amō** and **timeō** in the future indicative active. 3. Give the third person plural of **occupō** in the present, imperfect, and future of the indicative active. 4. Give the present stem, the tense sign, and the personal ending of the verb in sentence 8, section **197.** 5. Decline **suus.** 6. What Latin words can you trace in *exclamation?*

LESSON XXXIII

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE FUTURE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

199. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the future indicative passive:

Singular	*Singular*
portābor, *I shall be carried*	monēbor, *I shall be warned*
portāberis, *you will be carried*	monēberis, *you will be warned*
portābitur, *he, she, it will be carried*	monēbitur, *he, she, it will be warned*
Plural	*Plural*
portābimur, *we shall be carried*	monēbimur, *we shall be warned*
portābiminī, *you will be carried*	monēbiminī, *you will be warned*
portābuntur, *they will be carried*	monēbuntur, *they will be warned*

a. The tense sign is used as in the active, except that in the second person singular it takes the form **-be-**.

ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

200. The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the future:

Singular	*Plural*
erō, *I shall be*	erimus, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	eritis, *you will be*
erit, *he, she, it will be*	erunt, *they will be*

201. VOCABULARY

aut, *conj.*, or
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around, about
Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul; *pl.*, the Gauls
nārrō, -āre, tell, relate
statua, -ae, F., statue
terreō, -ēre, frighten
vīlla, -ae, F., villa, country house

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

circumnavigate narrate statue terrify

EXERCISES

202. 1. Hic gladius ā puerō portābitur. 2. Fīlius tuus ā Mārcō monēbitur. 3. Hic locus semper amīcō meō cārus erit. 4. Puer ex hōc locō campum pulchrum dēmōnstrābat. 5. Puerī et puellae terrēbuntur. 6. In vīllā meā sunt multae pictūrae et statuae. 7. Circum silvam cum amīcō ambulābō aut in oppidō manēbō. 8. Gallī nōn erunt amīcī Germānōrum. 9. Haec fābula ā nautā nārrātur.

203. 1. I shall always be your friend. 2. The men do not fear, but the boys will be frightened. 3. The slaves will be censured by the master. 4. This poet will always be loved. 5. These men will be famous.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the third person plural of **sum** in the present, imperfect, and future of the indicative. 2. Conjugate **laudō** and **terreō** in the future indicative passive. 3. Give the nominative plural of **hic locus.** 4. Give the third person plural of **nārrō** in the future indicative, active and passive. 5. What is the meaning of *circumference?*

LESSON XXXIV

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

MEANING OF THE PERFECT

204. The perfect tense of the Latin verb is sometimes translated by the English present perfect, *I have carried, I have warned,* etc., and sometimes by the simple past tense, *I carried, I warned,* etc. The meaning of the rest of the sentence or of the preceding sentences will usually make it easy to decide which of these two translations should be used. The past tense is required much more frequently than the present perfect in translation.

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

205. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the perfect indicative active:

Singular

portāvī, *I carried,* or *I have carried*
portāvistī, *you carried,* or *you have carried*
portāvit, *he carried,* or *he has carried*

Plural

portāvimus, *we carried,* or *we have carried*
portāvistis, *you carried* or *you have carried*
portāvērunt, *they carried* or *they have carried*

Singular	*Plural*
monuī, *I warned,* or *I have warned*	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt

a. The verbs **laudō, pugnō,** and **occupō** are conjugated in the perfect like **portō;** the verbs **habeō, timeō,** and **terreō** are conjugated in the perfect like **moneō.**

ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT

206. The personal endings which are used in forming the perfect indicative active are different from those used in the other tenses. They are as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
-ī	**-imus**
-istī	**-istis**
-it	**-ērunt**

a. The use of the perfect endings is the same in all verbs, regular or irregular.

207. VOCABULARY

hortus, -ī, M., garden
numquam, *adv.*, never
parātus, -a, -um, prepared
poena, -ae, F., punishment
quattuor, *indeclinable numeral,* four
saxum, -ī, N., rock, stone
socius, -ī, M., ally

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

horticulture preparation penitentiary social

EXERCISES

208. 1. Saepe fīlium tuum monuī. 2. Servī ex agrīs saxa portāvērunt. 3. Sociī nostrī fortiter pugnāvērunt, sed prīmō nōn parātī erant. 4. Hoc oppidum numquam ā Rōmānīs occupābitur. 5. Hī puerī poenam timuērunt. 6. Germānī multa oppida in Galliā occupāvērunt. 7. Hic agricola hortum pulchrum habet. 8. Quattuor equī in agrō errābant. 9. Hanc pictūram pulchram saepe laudāvī. 10. Hī virī numquam servī erunt.

209. 1. Cornelia warned her son, but he did not fear. 2. The boy carried the letter to the town. 3. We praised the boy's garden. 4. My friend has often praised your village. 5. These towns will be seized by the Gauls.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the personal endings of the perfect indicative active. 2. Con-
;ate **occupō** and **habeō** in the perfect indicative active. 3. Point out the
'sonal endings in the verbs of sentences 4 and 5, section **208.** 4. Conju-
.e **sum** in the future indicative. 5. Give the tense signs of the imperfect
l the future indicative of regular verbs of the first and second conjuga-
ns. 6. What is the Latin word from which *penalty* comes?

LESSON XXXV

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT: THE PERFECT AND THE IMPERFECT

THE PERFECT STEM

210. The perfect tense has no tense sign. Its forms are
ade by adding the perfect endings, which have been seen
section **206,** to the Perfect Stem. Since the personal
dings used in this tense are different from those used in
e other tenses, they serve to distinguish it, just as the tense
;ns serve to distinguish the other tenses.

The perfect stem of any verb may be found by dropping
e final **-ī** of the first person singular of the perfect indica-
'e. Thus, the perfect stem of **portō** is **portāv-,** and the
rfect stem of **moneō** is **monu-.** Tenses formed on the
rfect stem make what is called the Perfect System, while
ises formed on the present stem make the Present System.

a. All first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **dō, stō,** and **iuvō,** have the perfect ending in **-āvī** and hence they are conjugated in this tense exactly like **portō.** The perfect of **dō** is **dedī,** stem **ded-,** the perfect of **stō** is **stetī,** stem **stet-,** and the perfect of **juvō** is **jūvī,** stem **jūv-.** Any form of the perfect of these verbs may be found by adding to the stem the personal ending for the person and number required. Thus, **dedistī, jūvimus, stetērunt.**

b. Many, but not all, verbs of the second conjugation have the perfect tense ending in **-ī**, like **moneō**. The perfect of those which differ from **moneō** in the ending of the stem will be explained later.

TRANSLATION OF THE IMPERFECT AND THE PERFECT

211. It has been seen in sections **169** *a* and **204** that the English past tense is sometimes translated by the perfect and sometimes by the imperfect. The distinction between the two consists in the fact that the imperfect represents a past act as going on or denotes a situation in past time, while the perfect either denotes a single past act without reference to its continuance, or is equivalent to the English present perfect. In the sentence *We crossed the river* a single act in past time is denoted, and hence the perfect must be used in Latin. In the sentence, *Everyone feared war*, a situation in past time is denoted, and hence the imperfect will be used.

212. VOCABULARY

compleō, -ēre, fill, fill up
explōrō, -āre, explore
fossa, -ae, F., ditch
hodiē, *adv.*, today
invītō, -āre, invite
rūrsus, *adv.*, again
tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

complete exploration invitation

EXERCISES

213. 1. Haec loca rūrsus explōrāvimus. 2. Amīcum meum hodiē invītāvī. 3. Fossae ā servīs complēbuntur. 4. Hī virī in perīculō sunt, sed tamen nōn timent. 5. Sociī nostrī prō patriā suā fortiter pugnābant. 6. Eīs pecūniam dedimus et eōs jūvimus. 7. Hī virī semper amīcī nostrī erunt. 8. Bellum numquam amāvimus; bellum numquam amābimus.

9. Sed pugnāvimus quod patria nostra in perīculō erat. 10. Circum oppidum est fossa lāta.

214. 1. I have often explored this large plain. 2. This ditch was being filled by the boys. 3. Cornelia has invited these girls again. 4. Then I was living on an island. 5. The Romans built a small temple in this town.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **dō** and **juvō** in the perfect indicative active. 2. Indicate the perfect stem of the verbs in sentences 1, 2, and 6 of section **213.** 3. Explain the difference in meaning between the imperfect and the perfect tenses. 4. Give the third person singular of the perfect indicative active of **pugnō** and **stō.** 5. Name the tense of the verbs in each sentence of section **213.** 6. Give an English noun which is related in derivation to the verb **compleō.**

ROMAN TABLE

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

215. **VOCABULARY REVIEW**

aqua, -ae, F.
barba, -ae, F.
bēstia, -ae, F.
dōnum, -ī, N.
fābula, -ae, F.
fossa, -ae, F.
Gallia, -ae, F.
Gallus, -ī, M.
gladius, -ī, M.
hortus, -ī, M.
inimīcus, -ī, M.
locus, -ī, M.
nātūra, -ae, F.
nihil, *indecl.*, N.
nūntius, -ī, M.
pecūnia, -ae, F.
pictūra, -ae, F.
poena, -ae, F.
populus, -ī, M.
potentia, -ae, F.
pugna, -ae, F.
saxum, -ī, M.
socius, -ī, M.
statua, -ae, F.
vīlla, -ae, F.
angustus, -a, -um
cārus, -a, -um
clārus, -a, -um
ferus, -a, -um
īrātus, -a, -um
is, ea, id
parātus, -a, -um

quattuor
suus, -a, -um
vērus, -a, -um
quis, quae, quid
clāmō, -āre
compleō, -ēre
explōrō, -āre
invītō, -āre
juvō, -āre
maneō, -ēre
moveō, -ēre
nārrō, -āre
occupō, -āre
superō, -āre
terreō, -ēre
timeō, -ēre
fortiter
hodiē
magnopere
numquam
nunc
prīmō
rūrsus
tamen
tum
ad
ante
circum
per
post
propter
aut

LESSON XXXVI

USE OF PARTICIPLES: PAST PARTICIPLES

PARTICIPLES

216. There are certain verb forms which not only denote action, but also serve to tell something about a person or thing very much as an adjective does. Thus, in the sentence, *The boy, frightened by the noise, called for help,* the word *frightened* is a form of the verb *frighten,* but it serves to tell something about the situation or condition of the boy. It is called a Participle, and it shares something of the character of a verb and of an adjective. It has the character of a verb in that it denotes action and it has the character of an adjective in that it tells something about a noun or pronoun.

AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE

217. In Latin a participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs. In the Latin for the sentence, *The letter sent by my friend has not yet arrived,* the word for the participle *sent* will agree with the word for *letter* in gender, number, and case.

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

218. The English verb has a present and a past participle. The Latin verb has a present, a past, and a future participle. Only the past participle is given in this lesson. The other tenses will be given later.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

219. The past participle of the English verb is used both in the active and in the passive; active *having frightened,* passive *frightened* or *having been frightened.* Latin has a past passive participle, but no past active participle.

The past participle in English often has the same form

as the past tense of the active voice. Thus, in the sentence *The noise frightened the boy* the word *frightened* is not a participle, but a verb in the past tense of the indicative, because it is used to make a statement. In the sentence given above, *The boy, frightened by the noise, called for help,* the word *frightened* is not used to make a statement. The act which is said to take place is denoted by *called,* and *frightened* in this sentence, as we have already seen, merely serves to tell something about the condition of the boy.

a. The English past passive participle also has a compound form, *having been frightened,* which means the same as the simple form *frightened* and is translated into Latin in the same manner as the simple form. We might say *The boy, having been frightened by the noise, called for help.* These compound participles are almost never used in conversation, but they are sometimes, though not often, used in writing. They are sometimes used in translating to make clear the distinction between the past participle and the past indicative.

FORMS OF THE PAST PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

220. The past participle of **portō** is **portātus, -a, -um,** declined like **bonus.** It is translated *having been carried* or simply *carried.* The participle of **moneō** is **monitus, -a, -um.**

Puer ab agricolā monitus nunc labōrat, *the boy, having been warned by the farmer, is now working.* In this sentence **monitus** is masculine, singular, nominative, to agree with **puer,** which is the subject of **labōrat.**

a. The past participle of **juvō** is **jūtus, -a, -um,** of **dō** is **datus, -a, -um** (differing from **portātus** in that the **a** is short). All other verbs of the first conjugation which have been given thus far form their past participles like **portō**[1]: for example **laudātus, amātus,** etc.

[1] The verb **stō** has no past participle.

221. VOCABULARY

cēlō, -āre, conceal
conciliūm, -ī, N., council
convocō, -āre, call together
domicilium, -ī, N., residence, dwelling place
Italia, -ae, F., Italy
lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant, ambassador
necō, -āre, kill
proelium, -ī, N., battle

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

convoke domicile Italian legation

EXERCISES

222. 1. Puella ab amīcō tuō monita nōn in viā manēbat. 2. Pictūrae ex vīllā portātae huic fēminae dabuntur. 3. Servus ā dominō monitus nunc labōrat. 4. Gallī ā Rōmānīs superātī in oppidō manent. 5. Arma in oppidō cēlāta nōn videntur. 6. Hī virī convocātī perīculum vidēbunt. 7. Tum hic poēta domicilium in Italiā habēbat. 8. Rōmānī in eō proeliō multōs barbarōs necāvērunt. 9. Lēgātus concilium convocāvit et perīculum dēmōnstrāvit.

223. 1. The picture given by my friend is in my villa. 2. The boys invited by the woman are now in the town. 3. The boys, having-been-warned, will change their plan. 4. These men, having-been-praised by the lieutenant, will fight bravely. 5. The boy has a sword, given by the lieutenant.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What are the tenses of the English participle? 2. What are the tenses of the Latin participle? 3. What is an important difference between the past participle in Latin and in English? 4. Decline the past participle of **laudō**; of **moneō**. 5. Explain the gender, number, and case of **superāti** in sentence 4, section **222**. 6. What English word is connected in derivation with the past participle of **nārrō**?

LESSON XXXVII

PRINCIPAL PARTS: STEMS OF VERBS

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

224. There are certain forms of a verb which show us important facts regarding the conjugation of the verb in the different tenses. These are called Principal Parts.

The principal parts of a Latin verb are the present indicative active (first person singular), the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active (first person singular), and the past participle. Any form of a verb may be made when these are known.

The principal parts of **portō** and **moneō** are as follows:

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

a. The neuter form of the past participle is given in the principal parts for the reason that the past participles of some verbs have no masculine or feminine forms. But for most verbs, the participle is declined in all three genders. Thus, **amātus, -a, -um, territus, -a, -um,** etc.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS

225. All first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **juvō, dō,** and **stō,** form their principal parts like **portō.** The principal parts of these three are as follows:

dō, dare, dedī, datum
juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum
stō, stāre, stetī

a. The fourth principal part of **stō** will be explained later; **dō** is irregular in having the **a** short in the infinitive and past participle.

THE STEMS OF THE VERB

226. A verb regularly has three stems: the present, the perfect, and the participial. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present active infinitive, and the perfect stem by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active (see Lessons VIII and XXXV). The participial stem is found by dropping **-um** from the past participle: **portātum,** stem **portat-; monitum,** stem **monit-.**

IMPORTANCE OF PRINCIPAL PARTS AND STEMS

In order to find the stems of the verb, it is necessary to know its principal parts. These facts regarding the formation and use of stems are true of all verbs in the Latin language. It is therefore very important that they be remembered.

USE OF THE STEMS

227. The present, the past, and the future indicative, active and passive, are formed on the present stem.

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice. The perfect active indicative, which has already been given, and the past perfect and future perfect indicative, which will be given later, are formed on this stem. Only a few forms are made on the participial stem.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS

228. The principal parts of the second conjugation verbs which have been given thus far are as follows:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum

EXERCISES

229. 1. Magnum numerum equōrum in **agrō** vīdī. 2. Amīcī tuī huic puellae multōs librōs dedērunt. 3. Puerī vīsī in illō locō nōn manēbunt. 4. Hunc virum saepe jūvī. 5. Hī oppidānī numquam bellum amāvērunt, sed fortiter pugnābunt. 6. Hic puer parvus in silvā mānsit. 7. Fīlius tuus librōs meōs ex hōc locō mōvit. 8. In multīs oppidīs habitāvī et multōs amīcōs habeō. 9. Servus in viā vīsus ā dominō accūsābitur.

230. 1. The lieutenant killed four barbarians in that battle. 2. I have often seen this beautiful statue. 3. I warned the boy, but he remained in the forest. 4. I have always loved my native country, and I will fight for (**prō**) it. 5. The Gauls, having been warned, have moved their camp.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What are the principal parts of the verb? 2. How many stems does a verb regularly have? What are they? 3. Which of the principal parts are made on the present stem? 4. Give all the stems of **laudō, habeō,** and **dō.** 5. Give some English words which are derived from the past participle of **videō.** 6. Give the third person singular of **dō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect of the active voice. 7. Explain the case of **puellae** in sentence 2, section **229.**

LESSON XXXVIII

PAST PERFECT TENSE: ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

MEANING OF THE PAST PERFECT

231. The past perfect tense represents an act as completed at some specified or suggested time in the past. The English past perfect has the English auxiliary verb *had.* Thus, *I had carried, you had carried,* etc.

FORMATION OF THE LATIN PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE

232. The past perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-erā-**, which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are used as in the imperfect. The **ā** of the tense sign is short before the endings **-m, -t,** and **-nt.**

Singular

portāveram, *I had carried*	monueram, *I had warned*
portāverās, *you had carried*	monuerās, *you had warned*
portāverat, *he had carried*	monuerat, *he had warned*

Plural

portāverāmus, *we had carried*	monuerāmus, *we had warned*
portāverātis, *you had carried*	monuerātis, *you had warned*
portāverant, *they had carried*	monuerant, *they had warned*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

233. In English we sometimes use a noun without a preposition to tell how long an act or a situation continues. Thus, *We stayed in the country three days.* We may also say *We stayed in the country for three days.* The expressions *three days* in the first sentence, and *for three days* in the second mean exactly the same thing. In Latin a word which is thus used to denote duration of time is put in the accusative without a preposition. ***Multās hōrās* in īnsulā mānsī,** *I remained on the island many hours* (or *for many hours*).

234. VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, M., year
Britannia, -ae, F., Great Britain
honestus, -a, -um, honorable
hōra, -ae, F., hour
quīnque, *indeclinable num.*, five
schola, -ae, F., school
vīta, -ae, F., life
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

annual British honest scholar vital inevitable

EXERCISES

235. 1. Multās hōrās in eō locō mānsimus. 2. Lēgātus multa perīcula vītāverat. 3. Quīnque annōs in Britanniā habitāvī. 4. Hōs puerōs saepe monueram. 5. Numquam hunc locum vīderam, et timēbam. 6. Fīlius hujus virī honestus est. 7. Hic vir saepe amīcōs suōs jūverat. 8. Multa dōna eīs dederat. 9. Vīta lēgātī tum in magnō perīculō erat. 10. Mārcus in scholā quattuor hōrās erit. 11. Ille poēta in Italiā domicilium multōs annōs habēbat.

236. 1. I had often warned my friend, but he did not fear. 2. We shall not be in school many hours. 3. The lieutenant's daughter will remain in Italy for five years. 4. The Gauls had concealed their weapons in the town. 5. What had frightened those horses?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What auxiliary verb is used to form the past perfect in English? 2. What is the past perfect of the English verb *have* in the first person singular, active voice? 3. What is the tense sign of the past perfect indicative active in Latin? 4. On which stem is the past perfect active made? 5. Form an English sentence containing an expression of duration of time. 6. What is meant by *semi-annual?*

LESSON XXXIX

FUTURE PERFECT: SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

MEANING OF THE FUTURE PERFECT

237. The future perfect tense represents an act as to be completed at some specified or suggested time in the future. Thus, *I shall have finished the work in two weeks.* The future perfect is used less frequently than the other tenses in English. It is used somewhat more frequently in Latin than in English.

FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

238. The future perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-eri-**, which is added to the perfect stem. The personal endings are used as in the present tense. The **i** of the tense sign disappears before **-ō** in the first person singular.

Singular

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
portāveris, *you will have carried*
portāverit, *he will have carried*

Plural

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
portāveritis, *you will have carried*
portāverint, *they will have carried*

Singular

monuerō, *I shall have warned*
monueris, *you will have warned*
monuerit, *he will have warned*

Plural

monuerimus, *we shall have warned*
monueritis, *you will have warned*
monuerint, *they will have warned*

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

239. In Latin, as in English and in other modern languages, adjectives are sometimes used as substantives (nouns or pronouns). Thus, *Many wished to remain at home.* The word *many* is here used as subject of the sentence. Such words as *many, all, others, few,* and similar words are very frequently used thus. The masculine plural forms are regularly used to refer to persons. In addition to these words, Latin often uses **nostrī** to mean *our men* or *our sol-*

diers. Other possessives are sometimes used with a similar meaning. Thus **tuī** or **vestrī**, *your men* or *your soldiers*.

a. The neuter plural **multa** is often used to mean *many things*. Similarly, **haec**, the neuter plural of **hic**, is often used to mean *these things*.

240. VOCABULARY

altus, -a, -um, high, deep
diū, *adv.*, long, a long time
fuga, -ae, F., flight
mūrus, -ī, M., wall
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew
sī, *conj.*, if
signum, -ī, N., signal

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

altitude fugitive mural renovate sign

EXERCISES

241. 1. Haec perīcula vītāverō. 2. Nostrī signum vīderint. 3. Multī vītam ejus virī laudāvērunt. 4. Sī bellum renovāverint, perīculum magnum erit. 5. Sociī nostrī fugam barbarōrum vīderant. 6. In eō locō erat mūrus altus. 7. Hōs puerōs parvōs terruerō. 8. Haec pictūra in vīllā Mārcī multōs annōs mānserat. 9. Portāvit; portāverat; portāverit; monuērunt; monuerant; monuerint.

242. 1. Our friends will have seen many towns. 2. The flight of these men will have renewed our danger. 3. If I see (shall have seen) the signal, I shall call together the council. 4. Our (men) have good weapons and will fight bravely. 5. Many had long feared this danger, but we were not prepared.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the tense sign of the Latin future perfect indicative? 2. On which stem is the future perfect active formed? 3. What is the difference between the use of the personal endings in the past perfect and in the future perfect in the active? 4. Name some English adjectives which may be used as substantives. 5. Explain the substantive use of **nostrī**. 6. What are *mural* paintings?

LESSON XL

PERFECT SYSTEM OF *SUM*: ORDER OF WORDS

THE PERFECT, PAST PERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF *SUM*

243. The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect of the indicative:

Singular	*Plural*
Perfect	
fuī, *I have been, I was*	fuimus, *we have been, we were*
fuistī, *you have been, you were*	fuistis, *you have been, you were*
fuit, *he has been, he was*	fuērunt, *they have been, they were*
Past Perfect	
fueram, *I had been*	fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	fuerant, *they had been*
Future Perfect	
fuerō, *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

a. The perfect stem of **sum** is **fu-**.

VARIATION FROM THE NORMAL WORD ORDER

244. The normal order of a Latin sentence requires that the subject, with its modifiers, stand first, and that the verb, preceded by its modifiers, stand last. But the requirements of emphasis may change this order. Any word which is to be emphasized may stand in a different position in the sentence from that in which it would normally be placed. **Cūr amīcus tuus in silvā ambulat,** *why does your friend walk in the forest?* **Cūr amīcus tuus ambulat in silvā,** *why does your friend walk in the forest?* (rather than somewhere else.)

The fact that the form of a Latin word shows what its relation is to other words makes possible a much freer

arrangement in Latin than in English. If the subject is to be made emphatic, it may be placed last instead of first. But the fact that any word is put in an unusual position means that one or more of the other words in the sentence will be crowded out of the normal position. Sometimes the normal order is changed merely for the sake of variety.

245. VOCABULARY

auxilium, -ī, N., help, aid
beneficium, -ī, N., kindness, favor
cūr, *adv.*, why
porta, -ae, F., gate, door
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand
ubi, *adv.*, where, when
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

auxiliary beneficial portal vulnerable

EXERCISES

246. 1. Ubi hī puerī fuērunt? 2. Hoc oppidum quattuor portās habet. 3. In illō locō multās hōrās fuerāmus. 4. Sociī nostrī in magnō perīculō fuerint. 5. Cūr auxilium meum postulāvistī? 6. Beneficia tua magna fuērunt. 7. Amīcum meum vulnerāvērunt barbarī. 8. Semper grāta sunt beneficia amīcōrum. 9. Lēgātus gladium postulat. 10. Portās oppidī nunc videō.

247. 1. I have always been your friend. 2. We have been in the forest many hours. 3. The slaves will have been free for five years. 4. Why have you demanded our help? 5. My friend was wounded by the barbarians in that battle.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the perfect stem of **sum**? 2. Give the third person plural of **sum** in all the tenses of the indicative. 3. Conjugate **sum** in the imperfect and in the past perfect indicative. 4. Give the third person singular of **terreō** in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative active, and translate each form. 5. What is the meaning of *portière*?

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

248. (1) Possessive adjectives.
(2) The future indicative of the first and second conjugations.
(3) The future indicative of **sum.**
(4) The perfect indicative active.
(5) The past passive participle.
(6) Principal parts.
(7) The past perfect indicative active.
(8) The future perfect indicative active.
(9) The accusative of duration.
(10) The substantive use of adjectives.
(11) The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect of **sum.**
(12) Variation from the normal word order.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

249. Define the following English words and give Latin words with which they are connected in derivation:

altitude	fugitive	pecuniary
annual	gladiator	penitentiary
auxiliary	honest	population
beast	horticulture	potential
beneficial	inevitable	preparation
British	inimical	renovate
circumnavigate	invitation	scholar
clamor	irate	sign
complete	Italian	social
convoke	legation	statue
domicile	mural	visible
exploration	narrative	vital
expostulate	occupy	vulnerable

ROMAN FESTIVAL PROCESSION

LESSON XLI

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

250. The perfect indicative passive is not formed by adding personal endings to a stem, as are all the other tenses given thus far. Instead, the past passive participle is used with the present tense of the verb **sum**. Two separate words are used to represent each person and number. The perfect indicative passive of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

Singular

portātus sum, *I was carried* or *I have been carried*
portātus es, *you were carried* or *you have been carried*
portātus est, *he was carried* or *he has been carried*

Plural

portātī sumus, *we were carried* or *we have been carried*
portātī estis, *you were carried* or *you have been carried*
portātī sunt, *they were carried* or *they have been carried*

Singular

monitus sum, *I was warned* or *I have been warned*
monitus es, *you were warned* or *you have been warned*
monitus est, *he was warned* or *he has been warned*

Plural

monitī sumus, *we were warned* or *we have been warned*
monitī estis, *you were warned* or *you have been warned*
monitī sunt, *they were warned* or *they have been warned*

a. The forms of this tense are translated more frequently by the English past tense, *I was carried*, etc., than by the present perfect.

b. The participle used in forming this tense agrees with the subject in gender and number.

251. VOCABULARY

anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, increase, make larger
expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, expect, await
injūria, -ae, F., injury
longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, approve
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

auction augment expectation injurious probable

EXERCISES

252. 1. Aurum in vīllam ā servō portātum est. 2. Hic puer saepe monitus est et nunc labōrat. 3. Italia ā multīs amāta est. 4. Epistulae ab amīcō meō diū expectātae sunt. 5. Cōnsilium tuum probātum est quod bonum est. 6. Anteā domicilium longē ab oppidō habēbam. 7. Injūriae sociōrum nostrōrum multae et magnae sunt. 8. Vix haec perīcula vītāvī. 9. Numerus sociōrum nostrōrum augēbitur et victōria erit nostra. 10. Fīlius tuus in proeliō vulnerātus est.

253. 1. We have often been warned, but we do not fear. 2. The danger has been increased because there are many barbarians in the town. 3. Formerly our plans were not approved. 4. Now we are praised by many because we saw the danger. 5. I saw the camp with difficulty from this place.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. How is the perfect indicative passive of regular verbs formed? 2. Explain the gender of the participles in the verbs of sentences 1, 2, and 3 of section **252.** 3. Give the stem, tense sign, and personal ending of the verb of sentence 6, section **252.** 4. Conjugate **expectō** in the perfect indicative, active and passive. 5. Give the second person singular of **sum** in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative. 6. How is *auction* connected with **augeō?**

LESSON XLII

ſ PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

4. The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by ɔining the past participle with the imperfect tense of . The future perfect passive is formed by combining past participle with the future of **sum.**

PAST PERFECT

portātus eram,	**monitus eram,**
I had been carried	*I had been warned*
Singular	
ītus eram, *I had been carried*	monitus eram
ītus erās, *you had been carried*	monitus erās
ītus erat, *he had been carried*	monitus erat
Plural	
ītī erāmus, *we had been carried*	monitī erāmus
ītī erātis, *you had been carried*	monitī erātis
ītī erant, *they had been carried*	monitī erant

FUTURE PERFECT

portātus erō,	**monitus erō,**
I shall have been carried	*I shall have been warned*
Singular	
ītus erō, *I shall have been carried*	monitus erō
ītus eris, *you will have been carried*	monitus eris
ītus erit, *he will have been carried*	monitus erit
Plural	
ītī erimus, *we shall have been carried*	monitī erimus
ītī eritis, *you will have been carried*	monitī eritis
ītī erunt, *they will have been carried*	monitī erunt

255. VOCABULARY

cōpia, -ae, F., plenty; *pl.*, forces, troops
ibi, *adv.*, there,[1] in that place
mora, -ae, F., delay
praemium, -ī, N., reward
repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reject
scūtum, -ī, N., shield
sex, *indecl. num.*, six

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

copious premium repudiate

EXERCISES

256. 1. Multa praemia huic puerō data erant. 2. Cōnsilium tuum ā Mārcō nōn repudiātum erit. 3. Propter moram tuam cōpiae sociōrum nostrōrum in perīculō sunt. 4. Ibi sex hōrās mānserāmus. 5. Gallī magna scūta et longōs gladiōs habēbant. 6. Auxilium nostrum ā Gallīs nōn repudiātum erit. 7. Lēgātus in proeliō vulnerātus in hōc vīcō manēbit. 8. Cūr hoc praemium fīliae tuae datum erat? 9. Ibi multōs equōs in campō vīdimus. 10. Cūr perīculum ā nostrīs nōn vīsum est?

257. 1. Formerly Italy had been praised by many. 2. The danger will have been increased on account of the delay. 3. Our forces had not been seen by the barbarians. 4. This plan has been rejected because the Gauls will not give aid. 5. A reward had never been given to the slave.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. How are the past perfect and the future perfect passive formed? 2. Conjugate **superō** in the past perfect indicative passive. 3. Conjugate **videō** in the future perfect indicative passive. 4. Explain the case of **hōrās** in sentence 4, section **256.** 5. Point out an example of the substantive use of adjectives in section **256.** 6. At the beginning of the Great War a *moratorium* was declared in certain countries with regard to the payment of debts. What does that mean?

[1] For the use of *there* as an expletive, see section **102.**

LESSON XLIII

SYNOPSIS OF VERBS IN THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR INDICATIVE

258. A group of forms representing one person of a verb in all the tenses in one voice and number is called a Synopsis of the verb. The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular active and passive, indicative mood, is as follows:

Active

PRES.	portō, *I carry*
IMPF.	portābam, *I was carrying, I carried*
FUT.	portābō, *I shall carry*
PERF.	portāvī, *I carried, I have carried*
P. PERF.	portāveram, *I had carried*
F. PERF.	portāverō, *I shall have carried*

Passive

PRES.	portor, *I am carried*
IMPF.	portābar, *I was (being) carried*
FUT.	portābor, *I shall be carried*
PERF.	portātus sum, *I was* (or *have been*) *carried*
P. PERF.	portātus eram, *I had been carried*
F. PERF.	portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*

259. VOCABULARY

aeternus, -a, -um, eternal, undying
glōria, -ae, F., glory, fame
initium, -ī, N., beginning
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, announce, report
septem, *indeclinable num.*, seven
stīpendium, -ī, N., tax, tribute
ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

eternal glorious initial stipend

EXERCISES

260. 1. Multa saxa ā puerō portāta erant. 2. Propter hanc victōriam illī virī glōriam aeternam habēbunt. 3. Initium proeliī ab oppidānīs nūntiātum est. 4. Ultrā illam silvam est vīcus noster. 5. Barbarī superātī sunt, et stīpendium dabunt. 6. Multī in fugā necātī sunt. 7. Hic vir septem magna templa aedificāvit. 8. Rūrsus auxilium tuum postulō quod in perīculō sum. 9. Puer poenam timēbat quod nōn labōrāverat.

261. 1. The fame of your country will be everlasting. 2. My friend had not been invited by the lieutenant. 3. On account of the war I did not remain in Italy. 4. There are seven towns on this large island. 5. Why did you not announce the battle?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is meant by the synopsis of a verb? 2. Give a synopsis of **stō** in the third person singular of the indicative, active voice. 3. Give a synopsis of **moveō** in the third person singular of the indicative, passive voice. 4. Give a synopsis of **sum** in the third person plural of the indicative. 5. Give the stem, tense sign, and personal ending of the verbs in sentence 9, section **260.** 6. What English words or phrases can you find in which **ultrā** appears?

LESSON XLIV

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

262. In English, as has been stated, we have only a present participle and a past participle. The Latin verb has also future participles. The future active participle is formed on the participial stem, which has been seen in the past passive participle, section **226.** It ends in **-ūrus** (**-ūra, -ūrum**), and is declined like the past passive participle.

portātūrus, -a, -um, *about to carry,* or *going to carry.*
monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to warn,* or *going to warn*

263. Some verbs which have no past participle have a future active participle. The future active participle of such verbs is given as the fourth principal part.

The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus.** The principal parts of **sum** are **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.** The fourth of the principal parts of **stō** is **stātūrus.**

264. The future participle is often combined with the forms of **sum** to refer to something which some one intends to do or is about to do.

Mānsūrus eram, *I was about to remain, I intended to remain.*

Laudātūrus est, *he is about to praise, he intends to praise.*

265. VOCABULARY

adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable
fortūna, -ae, F., fortune
perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask
rota, -ae, F., wheel
scālae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, stairway
tantus, -a, -um, so great, so large

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

adverse fortunate interrogative rotation scale

EXERCISES

266. 1. Hic locus perīculōsus est, et nōn mānsūrus sum. 2. Propter fortūnam adversam, auxilium tuum rogātūrī sumus. 3. Dominus servōs suōs monitūrus erat. 4. Hic carrus parvās rotās habet. 5. Pulchrās scālās in templō vīdimus. 6. Cūr tantum praemium servus ā dominō suō postulat? 7. Tanta glōria nostra nōn erit. 8. Fortūna Rōmānīs nōn erat adversa. 9. Auxilium ā Germānīs rogātum nōn dabitur. 10. Tantum bellum nōn expectābāmus et nōn parātī erāmus.

267. 1. The lieutenant was about to call together a council. 2. We intend to (are about to) give a reward to these

Gauls because they have fought bravely. 3. I am going to relate a true story. 4. We had never before seen so large a forest. 5. This road through the forest is dangerous.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the future participle of **sum?** of **stō?** 2. What form of the verb is **rogātum** in sentence 9, section **266?** 3. Decline **tantus** in full. 4. Give a synopsis of **rogō** in the third person singular, active and passive, in the indicative. 5. Give the principal parts of **maneō** and **moneō**. 6. What is an *interrogation* point? From what is its name derived?

LESSON XLV

THIRD CONJUGATION, *Ō* VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

268. The present active infinitive of the third conjugation ends in **-ere.** The stem ending, **-e,** is replaced in most forms of the present indicative by **-i** or **-u.**

a. In the third conjugation the perfect and participial stems show less regularity of formation than in the first and second conjugations.

269. Verbs which have all their forms in the third conjugation are conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

dūcō, *I lead*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	
dūcō, *I lead*	dūcor, *I am led*
dūcis *you lead*	dūceris, *you are led*
dūcit, *he leads*	dūcitur, *he is led*
Plural	
dūcimus, *we lead*	dūcimur, *we are led*
dūcitis, *you lead*	dūciminī, *you are led*
dūcunt, *they lead*	dūcuntur, *they are led*

270. VOCABULARY

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead
firmus, -a, -um, strong, firm
item, *adv.*, also
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send
novus, -a, -um, new
praesidium, -ī, N., guard, garrison
relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictum, leave

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

firmness itemize mission novel relinquish

EXERCISES

271. 1. Lēgātus magnās cōpiās ad proelium dūcit. 2. Multās epistulās ad amīcōs mittimus. 3. Servus in oppidō relinquitur. 4. Hodiē novum perīculum ex barbarīs timēmus. 5. Noster vīcus nōn firmum praesidium habet. 6. Item vīlla tua in perīculō est. 7. Puella librōs in viā relinquit. 8. Librī ā puellā in viā relinquuntur. 9. Hic puer librōs meōs portātūrus est.

272. 1. This man is leading a large number of Germans into Gaul. 2. A strong garrison is left in the camp. 3. We are also leaving large forces in front of the town. 4. The sailors are sent to the island. 5. The danger of our friends will be increased.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the termination of the present active infinitive in the third conjugation? in the second conjugation? 2. Give the principal parts of **dūcō, mittō,** and **relinquō.** 3. Give the third person plural of **portō, moneō,** and **dūcō,** in the present indicative, active voice. 4. What is the difference between the forms of the past passive participle and the future active participle of **portō?** 5. Give the future active participle of **dūcō.** 6. From what two Latin words is *aqueduct* derived?

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

273. **VOCABULARY REVIEW**

annus, -ī, M.
auxilium, -ī, N.
beneficium, -ī, N.
Britannia, -ae, F.
concilium, -ī, N.
cōpia, -ae, F.
domicilium, -ī, N.
fortūna, -ae, F.
fuga, -ae, F.
glōria, ae, F.
hōra, -ae, F.
initium, -ī, N.
injūria, -ae, F.
Italia, -ae, F.
lēgātus, -ī, M.
mora, -ae, F.
mūrus, -ī, M.
porta, -ae, F.
praemium, -ī, N.
praesidium, -ī, N.
proelium, -ī, N.
rota, -ae, F.
scālae, -ārum, F.
schola, -ae, F.
scūtum, -ī, N.
signum, -ī, N.
stīpendium, -ī, N.
vīta, -ae, F.
adversus, -a, -um
aeternus, -a, -um
altus, -a, -um
firmus, -a, -um
honestus, -a, -um
novus, -a, -um
perīculōsus, -a, -um
quīnque
septem
sex
tantus, -a, -um
augeo, -ēre, auxī, auctum
cēlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictum
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
anteā
cūr
diū
ibi
item
longē
ubi
vix
ultrā
sī

LESSON XLVI

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE: PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

274. The present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in **-īre.** The present indicative is as follows:

audiō, *I hear*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	
audiō, *I hear*	audior, *I am heard*
audīs, *you hear*	audīris, *you are heard*
audit, *he hears*	audītur, *he is heard*
Plural	
audīmus, *we hear*	audīmur, *we are heard*
audītis, *you hear*	audīminī *you are heard*
audiunt, *they hear*	audiuntur, *they are heard*

a. In the present indicative of the fourth conjugation, as seen above, the characteristic vowel (ī) is long, except before the endings given in section **152** *a*, while in the third conjugation it is short. Before **-nt** and **-ntur** it appears as **-iu.**

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

275. In the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect, active and passive, verbs of the third and fourth conjugations are conjugated in the same manner as verbs of the first and second conjugations. The perfect and the participial stems are found from the principal parts, as has already been explained (section **226**), and the tense signs and personal endings are used with the perfect stems in exactly the same manner as with the perfect stems of **portō** and **moneō.**

276. VOCABULARY

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear
impedīmentum, -ī, N., hindrance; *pl.*, baggage[1]
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify
sonus, -ī, M., sound
tuba, -ae, F., trumpet
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum. come

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

audible impediment inter-state munitions resonant

EXERCISES

277. 1. Sonum tubārum audiō. 2. Gallī hodiē castra mūniunt. 3. Lēgātus cum oppidānīs venit. 4. Sonus tubae ā nostrīs audītur. 5. Ille locus hodiē ā Gallīs mūnītur. 6. Castra inter silvam et oppidum videō. 7. Lēgātus impedīmenta in castrīs relinquit. 8. Nostrae cōpiae ā virō clārō dūcuntur. 9. Quis cum amīcō tuō venit? 10. Quid puer in silvā vīdit? 11. Ab hīs puerīs audīmur sed nōn vidēmur.

278. 1. Our men are fortifying this town. 2. The boys and girls are coming from the villages. 3. We hear the sound of carts and horses in the street. 4. The boys were standing between the wall and the ditch. 5. Why does not the lieutenant leave the baggage in the town?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the termination of the present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation? 2. Conjugate **veniō** in the present indicative active. 3. Give the third person singular of **dūcō** and **mūniō** in the present indicative passive. 4. What is the case of **quid** in sentence 10, section **277**? 5. Conjugate **veniō** in the perfect indicative active. 6. Explain the meaning and derivation of *intervene*.

---

[1] The word "baggage" is sometimes used in referring to warfare in ancient times to include military equipment, provisions, etc., conveyed in wagons or carts or by pack animals.

LESSON XLVII

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

279. The ablative has been used thus far only as the object of a preposition. But it has certain uses in which no Latin preposition is employed. When thus used, the Latin word in the ablative will be translated by an English prepositional phrase.

THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

280. A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition. This is called the Ablative of Means. The English phrase used to translate the ablative of means has either the preposition *by* or *with*.

Puer *saxō* vulnerātus est, *the boy was wounded by the stone.*
Gallī *gladiīs* pugnant, *the Gauls fight with swords.*

In these two sentences the words **saxō** and **gladiīs** denote the means employed in doing the acts expressed by the verbs.

THREE USES OF THE ABLATIVE CONTRASTED

281. The use explained above must be distinguished from the ablative of agent, which denotes the person by whom an act is done, and which always takes the preposition **ā** or **ab.** It must also be distinguished from the ablative of accompaniment, which denotes the person with whom one is associated in doing something, and which takes **cum.** Thus, the sentence *He was hurt by a falling timber* contains an expression of means, and will have no preposition in Latin, while the sentence *He was helped by his brother* contains an expression of agency (the person acting) and requires a preposition, **ā** or **ab,** in Latin. In like manner, in the sentence *He was tied with a rope,* the phrase *with a rope*

denotes means, and will have no preposition in Latin, while in the sentence *He lives with his grandfather*, the phrase *with his grandfather* denotes association with a person (accompaniment) and will take the preposition **cum** in Latin.

282. VOCABULARY

angulus, -ī, M., corner
bis, *adv.*, twice
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, condemn
factum, -ī, N., deed, action
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, carry, carry on, wage
interdum, *adv.*, sometimes
sagitta, -ae, F., arrow

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

angle condemnation fact

EXERCISES

283. 1. Hic vir amīcum suum sagittā vulnerāvit. 2. Lēgātus barbarum gladiō necāvit. 3. Puerī interdum saxīs pugnant. 4. Id factum ā virīs bonīs condemnātur. 5. Gallī cum Germānīs bella bis gessērunt. 6. In eō angulō Italiae domicilium meum habeō. 7. Fēminae ex oppidō sonum proeliī audiunt. 8. Bellum in Galliā ā Germānīs geritur. 9. Condemnāmus; habēmus; mittimus; venīmus.

284. 1. The barbarian was killed by a stone. 2. This man wounded the sailor with his sword. 3. That town has been fortified by a high wall. 4. The sound of weapons is heard by the women in the town. 5. Sometimes I walked in the forest with my friend.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. In what important respect does the ablative of means differ from the ablatives which have been used previously? 2. What two English prepositions are used in expressions of means? 3. Name two different kinds of phrases in which the preposition *by* may be used. 4. Name two different kinds of phrases employing *with*. 5. Point out an ablative of means and an ablative of agent in the sentences of **283.** 6. What is a *triangle?*

LESSON XLVIII

THE IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: THE ENCLITIC *-QUE*

THE IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

285. 1. The tense sign of the imperfect indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is **-bā-**, as in the first and second conjugations. The imperfect indicative of **dūcō** is formed exactly like the same tense of **moneō**. Verbs of the fourth conjugation have **iē** before the tense sign.

2. The imperfect indicative of **dūcō** and **audiō** is as follows:

dūcēbam, *I was leading* **audiēbam,** *I was hearing*
dūcēbar, *I was being led* **audiēbar,** *I was being heard*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
		Singular	
dūcēbam	dūcēbar	audiēbam	audiēbar
dūcēbās	dūcēbāris	audiēbās	audiēbāris
dūcēbat	dūcēbātur	audiēbat	audiēbātur
		Plural	
dūcēbāmus	dūcēbāmur	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
dūcēbātis	dūcēbāminī	audiēbātis	audiēbāminī
dūcēbant	dūcēbantur	audiēbant	audiēbantur

THE ENCLITIC *-QUE*

286. There are certain words in Latin which are added as final syllables to other words. They are called Enclitics. An important enclitic is **-que,** meaning *and.* It is sometimes used instead of **et** to join words which are closely connected in thought or in use. It is always translated *before* the word to which it is joined. Thus **puerī puellaeque,** *the boys and girls.*

287. VOCABULARY

āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum, lose
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround
octō, *indecl. num.*, eight
-que, *conj.*, and
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, find
terminus, -ī, M., boundary, end
vāllum, -ī, N., rampart, wall

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

precinct octave terminal termination

EXERCISES

288. 1. Sociī nostrī castra vāllō cingēbant. 2. Agricolae ex agrīs cum carrīs et equīs veniēbant. 3. Cōpiae nostrae ā Mārcō dūcēbantur. 4. Sonus armōrum ex oppidō audiēbātur. 5. Virī fēminaeque nunc perīculum vident. 6. Librum meum in viā āmīsī. 7. Ille puer vīdit repperitque librum tuum. 8. Tum ad terminum campī veniēbāmus. 9. Bellum in Galliā octō annōs gestum est. 10. Terminus viae ex hōc locō vidētur.

289. 1. The lieutenant was leading large forces from the town to the camp. 2. War was then being waged in Gaul by the Germans. 3. The slave was coming from the field with his master. 4. The large town was being fortified with a rampart and a ditch. 5. Marcus is censured because he often loses his books.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **mittō** and **veniō** in the imperfect indicative, active voice. 2. Give the future active participle of **gerō**. 3. What is an enclitic? 4. What is the rule for the position of the enclitic **-que**? 5. Explain the case of **vāllō** in sentence 1 and of **Mārcō** in sentence 3, section **288**. 6. Give an English verb which is connected in derivation with **terminus**.

LESSON XLIX

FUTURE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

THE TENSE SIGN OF THE FUTURE

290. In the first and second conjugations, as we have seen in section **194** *a*, the tense sign of the future is **-bi-**. This tense sign does not appear in the third and fourth conjugations. In its place there is a tense sign, **-ē-**, which is replaced by **-a-** in the first person singular. Before the personal endings **-t, -nt,** and **-ntur** the **-ē-** becomes short.

USE OF THE TENSE SIGN

291. In the case of third conjugation verbs which are conjugated like **dūcō,** the tense sign of the future replaces the final letter of the stem. In the fourth conjugation it is added to the stem.

ACTIVE

Singular

dūcam, *I shall lead*	audiam, *I shall hear*
dūcēs, *you will lead*	audiēs, *you will hear*
dūcet, *he will lead*	audiet, *he will hear*

Plural

dūcēmus, *we shall lead*	audiēmus, *we shall hear*
dūcētis, *you will lead*	audiētis, *you will hear*
dūcent, *they will lead*	audient, *they will hear*

PASSIVE

dūcar, *I shall be led*		**audiar,** *I shall be heard*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
dūcar	dūcēmur	audiar	audiēmur
dūcēris	dūcēminī	audiēris	audiēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur	audiētur	audientur

292. VOCABULARY

celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly
contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum, contend, fight; hasten
excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw
Helvētiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Helvetians
novem, *indecl. num.*, nine
prīmus, -a, -um, first
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

contention	exceed[1]	November	primary
	excess	inscription	scribe

EXERCISES

293. 1. Helvētiī cōpiās suās ex castrīs dūcent. 2. Verba tua ā multīs audientur. 3. Propter nātūram locī perīculum nostrum augētur. 4. Quod factum meum nōn probātur, ex Italiā excēdam. 5. In prīmō proeliō Gallī superātī sunt. 6. Celeriter ex hōc locō excēdēmus quod perīculōsus est. 7. Helvētiī saepe cum Germānīs cōntendēbant. 8. In patriā nostrā novem annōs habitāvistī. 9. Longam epistulam ad amīcum meum scrīpsī. 10. Domicilium prīmum meum erat in angulō hujus īnsulae.

294. 1. Large forces will be led by the lieutenant. 2. We shall hear the sound of the trumpets from the camp. 3. On account of the great number of the Helvetians, this war was dangerous. 4. Why do you not withdraw quickly from Gaul? 5. We shall not contend with so great a number of Romans.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the tense sign of the future indicative in the first and second conjugations? in the third and fourth conjugations? 2. Give the third person plural of **veniō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active. 3. Give the second person singular of **dūcō** in the present indicative passive and the future indicative passive. 4. What is the personal ending of the verb in sentence 8, section **293**? 5. What is meant by *inscribe*?

---

[1] Occasionally **excēdō** was used to mean *surpass*.

LESSON L

DECLENSION OF *ĪDEM*

295. The declension of **īdem,** *same,* is as follows:

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
		Singular	
NOM.	īdem	eadem	idem
GEN.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
		Plural	
NOM.	īdem *or* eīdem[1]	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem[1]	eīsdem *or* īsdem

a. The forms of **īdem** are seen to be for the most part identical with those of **is** with the syllable **-dem** added. Before **d** the final **-m** is changed to **-n.**

b. Occasionally **īdem** is used as a pronoun meaning *the same person* (neuter, **idem,** *the same thing*). But it is commonly used as an adjective in agreement with a noun.

296. **VOCABULARY**

biennium, -ī, N., two years
Hibernia, -ae, F., Ireland
īdem, eadem, idem, same, the same
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place
posteā, *adv.*, afterward
statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, on the other side of

[1] Sometimes iidem. The dative and ablative plural are sometimes iisdem.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

biennial Hibernian position transpose

EXERCISES

297. 1. In eōdem locō multās hōrās mānsī. 2. Eundem sonum anteā audīvimus. 3. Eōsdem virōs rūrsus convocāvistī. 4. Magnum numerum eōrundem barbarōrum posteā vīdī, sed nōn timuī. 5. Hibernia et Britannia sunt magnae īnsulae. 6. Rōmānī castra in illō locō posuērunt. 7. Statim veniam et biennium manēbō. 8. Rōmānī trāns fossam Gallōs expectābant (*were awaiting*). 9. Puerī nihil in silvā reperient. 10. Propter nātūram viae nōn celeriter veniēmus.

298. 1. Why do you always censure the same boys? 2. These slaves have the same master, but they do not work in the same fields. 3. Many friends of the same girl were invited. 4. I have never lived in Ireland. 5. We shall withdraw from this town at once.

THE PYRAMID OF CESTIUS

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **īdem sonus.** 2. Decline together **eadem silva.** 3. Give the masculine accusative singular of **is** and of **īdem.** 4. Give a synopsis of **pōnō** in the third person singular, active voice, indicative mood. 5. Name the tenses of the verbs in sentences 7 and 8, section **297.** 6. What is a *transcontinental* railroad?

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

299. (1) The perfect indicative passive.
(2) The past perfect indicative passive.
(3) The future perfect indicative passive.
(4) The synopsis of verbs.
(5) The future active participle.
(6) The present indicative of the third conjugation.
(7) The present indicative of the fourth conjugation.
(8) The imperfect indicative of the third and fourth conjugations.
(9) The future indicative of the third and fourth conjugations.
(10) The declension of **īdem.**
(11) The ablative of means.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

300. Define the following English words and give Latin words with which they are connected in derivation:

adverse	fortune	octave
angle	glory	peril
auction	Hibernian	position
audible	impediment	premium
biennial	initial	primary
condemnation	injury	probable
contention	inscription	relinquish
copious	inter-state	repudiate
eternal	intervene	rotation
exceed	itemize	scale
excess	mission	sonorous
expectation	munitions	stipend
fact	novel	termination
firm	November	transpose

LESSON LI

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION ENDING IN *-IŌ*

CLASSES OF THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS

301. There are two classes of verbs in the third conjugation, commonly distinguished as **ō** verbs and **iō** verbs. The **ō** verbs are those which are conjugated like **dūcō.** The **iō** verbs are conjugated in the present indicative partly like **dūcō** and partly like verbs of the fourth conjugation. In the imperfect indicative and the future indicative they are conjugated exactly like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

PRESENT SYSTEM OF VERBS ENDING IN *-IŌ*

302.

PRESENT			
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
IMPERFECT			
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur
FUTURE			
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

a. These verbs differ from fourth conjugation verbs in the following forms of the present tense: the second person singular, active and passive, the first and second persons

plural, active and passive, and the third person singular, passive. All these forms of fourth conjugation verbs have **ī** as the connecting vowel, while **capiō** has short **i** in the corresponding forms except in the second person singular of the passive, in which the connecting vowel is **e**.

303. VOCABULARY

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do
frūmentum, -ī, N., grain
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee
incognitus, -a, -um, unknown
terra, -ae, F., land
jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, throw

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

capture manufacture territory reject

EXERCISES

304. 1. Nūntius in silvā capiētur et necābitur. 2. Ille puer parvum carrum facit. 3. Saxa ā Germānīs et Gallīs jaciuntur. 4. Multī ex eō oppidō fugiēbant. 5. Nostrī in illīs vīcīs multum frūmentum capient. 6. Britannia erat Rōmānīs terra incognita. 7. Helvētiī castra ante silvam pōnent. 8. Ille vir multās fābulās nārrābat. 9. Hī amīcī diū in eōdem vīcō habitāvērunt. 10. Saepe in eādem viā ambulō.

305. 1. The slave takes the sword and shield. 2. The boy will throw a stone over (across) the wall. 3. This town will not be taken by the Romans. 4. We were making a large number of shields. 5. Why were you fleeing from the camp?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What are the two classes of verbs in the third conjugation? 2. Give a synopsis of **faciō** in the third person singular, active voice, indicative mood. 3. Give the principal parts of **pōnō**. 4. Give the future active participle of **capiō**. 5. Conjugate **gerō** in the future indicative active. 6. What is meant by the phrase *terra firma?*

LESSON LII

REVIEW OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM, INDICATIVE MOOD

306. PRESENT INFINITIVE

		Terminations	*Stem*
I.	**portāre**	**-āre**	**portā-**
II.	**monēre**	**-ēre**	**monē-**
III.	**dūcere**	**-ere**	**dūce-**
	capere		**cape**
IV.	**audīre**	**-īre**	**audī-**

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

307. The present tense is formed by adding the personal endings to the present stem. In the first person singular of the first conjugation and of the **ō** verbs of the third conjugation the stem vowel disappears. In the third conjugation the vowel of the stem ending becomes **u** before **-nt** and **-ntur.** It becomes **i** before all other endings except **-ris.** In all **iō** verbs **-nt** and **-ntur** are preceded by **iu.**

ACTIVE

I.	II.	III.		IV.
		Singular		
portō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
portās	monēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
portat	monet	dūcit	capit	audit
		Plural		
portāmus	monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
portātis	monētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
portant	monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

PASSIVE

		Singular		
portor	moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
portāris	monēris	dūceris	caperis	audīris
portātur	monētur	dūcitur	capitur	audītur

Plural

portāmur	**monēmur**	**dūcimur**	**capimur**	**audīmur**
portāminī	**monēminī**	**dūciminī**	**capiminī**	**audīminī**
portantur	**monentur**	**dūcuntur**	**capiuntur**	**audiuntur**

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

308. The sign of the imperfect tense, **-bā-**, appears in all four conjugations. In third conjugation **ō** verbs the short **e** of the stem becomes long before **-bā-**, making their imperfect tense identical with that of the second conjugation. Third conjugation verbs in **iō** and all fourth conjugation verbs have the tense sign preceded by **iē**.

ACTIVE

Singular

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portābam	monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
portābās	monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
portābat	monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat

Plural

portābāmus	monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
portābātis	monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
portābant	monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

PASSIVE

Singular

portābar	monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
portābāris	monēbāris	dūcēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
portābātur	monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur

Plural

portābāmur	monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
portābāminī	monēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
portābantur	monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE

309. In the first and second conjugations the tense sign is **-bi-** except in the third person plural, in which it appears as

-bu-, and in the second person singular of the passive, where it becomes **-be-**. The **i** disappears before **-ō** and **-or**. In the third and fourth conjugations the tense sign is **-ē-** (in the first person singular, **-a-**). The **i** of the **iō** verbs of the third conjugation and of the verbs of the fourth conjugation is retained.

ACTIVE

I.	II.	II.		IV.
		Singular		
portābō	monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portābis	monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
portābit	monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
		Plural		
portābimus	monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
portābitis	monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
portābunt	monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient

PASSIVE

		Singular		
portābor	monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portāberis	monēberis	dūcēris	capiēris	audiēris
portābitur	monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
		Plural		
portābimur	monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
portābiminī	monēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
portābuntur	monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

310. VOCABULARY

captīvus, -ī, M., prisoner
castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt
cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, complete
iterum, *adv.*, again
mox, *adv.*, soon, presently
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, attack
tēlum, -ī, N., weapon

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

captive castle confectionery reiterate

STREET OF OSTIA

EXERCISES

311. 1. In castrīs multōs captīvōs servōsque reperiēmus. 2. Gallī castella Rōmānōrum mox oppugnābunt sed nōn capient. 3. Sociī nostrī iterum auxilium nostrum postulant. 4. Ex silwā fugimus quod perīculum magnopere timēmus. 5. Tēla ā nostrīs in oppidum Germānōrum jaciuntur. 6. Hoc bellum nōn celeriter cōnficiētur. 7. Cūr iterum haec loca explōrābās? 8. Fēminae cum puerīs et puellīs in oppidīs manēbant, et virī in proeliō pugnābant. 9. Multī ex Hiberniā nunc veniunt. 10. Puerī sonō proeliī terrēbuntur.

312. 1. Many prisoners are seen in the camp. 2. The barbarians will attack this fort again, but they will not capture the camp. 3. This victory will frighten the Gauls greatly, and they will flee from their villages. 4. Our men were sending the prisoners to the island. 5. The boy was carrying (**gerere**) a weapon because the place was dangerous.

LESSON LIII

REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM, INDICATIVE MOOD

313. 1. The formation of the perfect system is the same in all four conjugations. The perfect stem (which is used only in the active voice) is found by dropping the **-ī** of the perfect active indicative, the third of the principal parts. The endings of the perfect indicative active are the same for all verbs.

I.	II.	III.		IV.	*Endings*
		Singular			
portāvī	monuī	dūxī	cēpī	audīvī	**-ī**
portāvistī	monuistī	dūxistī	cēpistī	audīvistī	**-istī**
portāvit	monuit	dūxit	cēpit	audīvit	**-it**
		Plural			
portāvimus	monuimus	dūximus	cēpimus	audīvimus	**-imus**
portāvistis	monuistis	dūxistis	cēpistis	audīvistis	**-istis**
portāvērunt	monuērunt	dūxērunt	cēpērunt	audīvērunt	**-ērunt**

2. The sign of the past perfect indicative is **-erā-**, which is added to the perfect stem.

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portāveram	monueram	dūxeram	cēperam	audīveram
portāverās,	monuerās,	dūxerās,	cēperās,	audīverās,
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*	*etc.*	*etc.*

3. The sign of the future perfect is **-eri-**, which is added to the perfect stem. Before **-ō** the **i** of the tense sign disappears.

portāverō	monuerō	dūxerō	cēperō	audīverō
portāveris,	monueris,	dūxeris,	cēperis,	audīveris,
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*	*etc.*	*etc.*

REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

314. The formation of the perfect system in the passive is the same in all four conjugations. The perfect is made up of the past passive participle and the present tense of

sum; the past perfect, of the past passive participle and the imperfect tense of **sum**; and the future perfect, of the past passive participle and the future tense of **sum**.

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
portātus sum	portātus eram	portātus erō
monitus sum,	monitus eram,	monitus erō,
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

315. VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, M., mind, courage, spirit
jūstitia, -ae, F., justice
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet
rēgnum, -ī, N., royal power; kingdom
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive
petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, seek, ask
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

animate justice compete protection

EXERCISES

316. 1. Scūtō meō amīcum tuum tēxī. 2. Multī in eā terrā aurum petīvērunt. 3. Hic vir propter jūstitiam suam saepe laudātus est. 4. Nōndum āmissus est animus. 5. Poēta clārus in oppidum nostrum pervēnit. 6. Tum fīlius illīus virī rēgnum in Italiā occupāverat. 7. Barbarī poenam timēbant et ex castrīs fūgērunt. 8. Ā lēgātō saepe cōpiae Gallōrum superātae erant. 9. Dūxistis; cēpistis; audīvistis; cēpit; cēperat; cēperit. 10. Audītus est; audītus erat; audītus erit; captī sunt; captī erant; captī erunt.

317. 1. I shall have arrived in Gaul, and I shall be free. 2. You (*singular*) will lose royal power on account of this war. 3. The royal power has been seized and the towns have been captured. 4. We had fortified the camp and were awaiting the forces of the barbarians. 5. He has fled; he had fled; he will have fled; he comes; he has come.

LESSON LIV

THE THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

THE NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

318. Nouns of the third declension have the genitive singular ending in **-is.** In this declension the nominative singular is formed in a number of different ways. But if the genitive singular is learned at the same time as the nominative, these variations in the nominative will cause no difficulty. This declension includes masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

319. There are two general classes of nouns in the third declension. They differ mainly in the ending of the genitive plural. Those which belong to the first class have the genitive plural ending in **-um.** Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

lēx, F., *law*		**mīles,** M., *soldier*	
BASE, **lēg-**		BASE, **mīlit-**	
	Singular		
NOM.	lēx	NOM.	mīles
GEN.	lēgis	GEN.	mīlitis
DAT.	lēgī	DAT.	mīlitī
ACC.	lēgem	ACC.	mīlitem
ABL.	lēge	ABL.	mīlite
	Plural		
NOM.	lēgēs	NOM.	mīlitēs
GEN.	lēgum	GEN.	mīlitum
DAT.	lēgibus	DAT.	mīlitibus
ACC.	lēgēs	ACC.	mīlitēs
ABL.	lēgibus	ABL.	mīlitibus

frāter, M., *brother*		**homō,** M., *man*	
BASE, **frātr-**		BASE, **homin-**	
	Singular		
NOM.	frāter	NOM.	homō
GEN.	frātris	GEN.	hominis
DAT.	frātrī	DAT.	hominī
ACC.	frātrem	ACC.	hominem
ABL.	frātre	ABL.	homine
	Plural		
NOM.	frātrēs	NOM.	hominēs
GEN.	frātrum	GEN.	hominum
DAT.	frātribus	DAT.	hominibus
ACC.	frātrēs	ACC.	hominēs
ABL.	frātribus	ABL.	hominibus

ENDINGS

320. The case endings, as seen above, are as follows:

Singular		*Plural*
NOM.	-[1]	**-ēs**
GEN.	**-is**	**-um**
DAT.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
ACC.	**-em**	**-ēs**
ABL.	**-e**	**-ibus**

321. VOCABULARY

ater, frātris, M., brother
Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill
homō, hominis, M., man
lēx, lēgis, F., law
mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier
rēx, rēgis, M., king

a. The word **homō** is more frequently used than **vir** to mean *man* or *human being* in a general sense. Usually **vir** means *a man of courage* or *honor.*

[1] The formation of the nominative is explained in the Appendix, section **624** Note.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

fraternal legal military regal

EXERCISES

322. 1. Rēx Hispāniae multōs mīlitēs habēbat. 2. Frāter meus item mīles fuit et in bellō vulnerātus est. 3. Hanc lēgem probāmus et laudāmus. 4. Ad eum locum magnum numerum mīlitum dūxit. 5. Rēx ab inimīcō interfectus est. 6. Hī hominēs lēgēs nōn timent. 7. Hic vir potentiam rēgis nōn timet. 8. Mīlitēs Rōmānī scūta et gladiōs habuērunt. 9. Frātrem meum saepe laudāvistī. 10. Hī mīlitēs patriam suam amant. 11. Mīlitēs nostrī scūta nōn gerunt.

323. 1. This law is good, and it is praised by many. 2. Our soldiers are now in Gaul. 3. Your brother saw the soldiers in the forest. 4. Many barbarians were killed in flight by the soldiers. 5. This man has lost his brother and his son.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the ending of the genitive singular in the third declension? in the second declension? 2. Decline together **lēx bona.** 3. Decline together the words for *this soldier*. 4. Give the endings of the accusative plural of **silva, dominus,** and **homō.** 5. How do **homō** and **vir** differ in meaning? 6. What is the *legislature* of a state?

ANCIENT BOWLS

LESSON LV

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

24. There are many neuter nouns of the third declension. ɜse, like the masculine and feminine nouns, form the nomi- ive in different ways. Neuter nouns belonging to the ıe general class of the third declension as the masculine l feminine nouns which have been given, are declined follows:

flūmen, N., *river*		**caput,** N., *head*	
BASE, **flūmin-**		BASE, **capit-**	
	Singular		
NOM.	flūmen	NOM.	caput
GEN.	flūminis	GEN.	capitis
DAT.	flūminī	DAT.	capitī
ACC.	flūmen	ACC.	caput
ABL.	flūmine	ABL.	capite
	Plural		
NOM.	flūmina	NOM.	capita
GEN.	flūminum	GEN.	capitum
DAT.	flūminibus	DAT.	capitibus
ACC.	flūmina	ACC.	capita
ABL.	flūminibus	ABL.	capitibus

corpus, N., *body*		**iter,** N., *journey, road*		
BASE, **corpor-**		BASE, **itiner-**		
	Singular			
				Endings
NOM.	corpus	NOM.	iter	—
GEN.	corporis	GEN.	itineris	**-is**
DAT.	corporī	DAT.	itinerī	**-ī**
ACC.	corpus	ACC.	iter	—
ABL.	corpore	ABL.	itinere	**-e**

Plural

NOM.	corpora	NOM.	itinera	**-a**
GEN.	corporum	GEN.	itinerum	**-um**
DAT.	corporibus	DAT.	itineribus	**-ibus**
ACC.	corpora	ACC.	itinera	**-a**
ABL.	corporibus	ABL.	itineribus	**-ibus**

a. These four words illustrate different formations of the nominative, but there is no difference in the manner in which they are declined. If any one of the four is learned, the others can be declined, when the nominative and genitive are known. These nominatives are explained in section **624** of the Appendix, page 272.

325. In the neuter noun **templum** of the second declension (section **56**), we have seen that the accusative singular is the same as the nominative singular, and that the accusative plural is the same as the nominative plural. This is also true of the neuter nouns of the third declension given above, and it is true of all neuter nouns in the Latin language, no matter what the declension to which they belong.

326. VOCABULARY

caput, capitis, N., head
corpus, corporis, N., body
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, defend
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, exhausted
flūmen, flūminis, N., river
iter, itineris, N., road, march, journey
nēmō, *dat.* **nēminī,** *acc.* **nēminem** (*no gen. or abl.*), no one

a. The missing genitive and dative of **nēmō** are supplied from another word which will be given later.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

capital corporal defender defense itinerary

EXERCISES

327. 1. Illud flūmen lātum et altum est. 2. Hī hominēs magna corpora habent, sed mīlitēs bonī nōn erunt. 3. Frāter tuus iter longum fēcerat et dēfessus erat. 4. Hic equus caput parvum habet. 5. Nēmō frātrem tuum laudat. 6. Patriam nostram gladiīs, nōn verbīs, dēfendēmus. 7. Multī mīlitēs Rōmānī in eō proeliō interfectī sunt, sed nēmō fūgit. 8. Corpus meum scūtō tēxī, et nōn vulnerātus sum. 9. In hōc flūmine sunt multae īnsulae. 10. Lēgēs Italiae et Galliae nōn eaedem sunt.

328. 1. I shall defend my brother with my sword. 2. We shall see the large river from this place. 3. This wild beast has a large body. 4. The head of this statue is beautiful. 5. The boys have been working (have worked), and they are tired out.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the ending of the nominative and accusative plural of neuter nouns of the second declension? of the third declension nouns given in section **324?** 2. What other form of neuter nouns in the singular number is the same as the nominative? 3. Decline together **flūmen lātum.** 4. How many case forms of **nēmō** are there? 5. Decline **iter.** 6. Give an English adjective which is connected in derivation with **dēfendō.**

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

329. VOCABULARY REVIEW

angulus, -ī, M.
animus, -ī, M.
biennium, -ī, N.
captīvus, -ī, M.
caput, capitis, N.
castellum, -ī, N.
corpus, corporis, N.
factum, -ī, N.
flūmen, flūminis, N.
frāter, frātris, M.
frūmentum, -ī, N.
Hibernia, -ae, F.
Hispānia, -ae, F.
homō, hominis, M.
impedīmentum, -ī, N.
iter, itineris, N.

jūstitia, -ae, F.
lēx, lēgis, F.
mīles, mīlitis, M.
nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, M., F.
rēgnum, -ī, N.
rēx, rēgis, M.
sagitta, -ae, F.
sonus, -ī, M.
terminus, -ī, M.
terra, -ae, F.
tuba, -ae, F.
vāllum, -ī, N.
dēfessus, -a, -um
īdem, eadem, idem
incognitus, -a, -um
novem
octō
prīmus, -a, -um

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum
cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum
excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum

bis	iterum	posteā	trāns
celeriter	mox	statim	-que
interdum	nōndum	inter	

LESSON LVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

ASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

330. The second of the two general classes of nouns of the ird declension differs from the first class in that the geni- ve plural ends in **-ium** instead of **-um.** There are also a w other differences. In the vocabularies of this book these ouns have the genitive plural ending **-ium** printed after the enitive singular. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class re declined as follows:

331.

ostis, M., *enemy*		**caedēs,** F., *slaughter*		**gēns,** F., *nation,*	
ASE, **host-**		BASE, **caed-**		BASE, **gent-**	
		Singular			*Endings*
OM.	hostis	NOM.	caedēs	NOM.	gēns	**-s**
EN.	hostis	GEN.	caedis	GEN.	gentis	**-is**
AT.	hostī	DAT.	caedī	DAT.	gentī	**-ī**
CC.	hostem	ACC.	caedem	ACC.	gentem	**-em**
BL.	hoste	ABL.	caede	ABL.	gente	**-e**
		Plural				
OM.	hostēs	NOM.	caedēs	NOM.	gentēs	**-ēs**
EN.	hostium	GEN.	caedium	GEN.	gentium	**-ium**
AT.	hostibus	DAT.	caedibus	DAT.	gentibus	**-ibus**
CC.	hostīs, -ēs	ACC.	caedīs, -ēs	ACC.	gentīs, -ēs	**-īs, -ēs**
BL.	hostibus	ABL.	caedibus	ABL.	gentibus	**-ibus**

a. The nouns given above really belong to two groups, one called **ī**-stems, the other mixed stems. For the present they may be taken as one class.

b. The Romans sometimes used **-īs** and sometimes **-ēs** as the ending of the accusative plural. The form in **-īs** is the more common.

332. VOCABULARY

caedēs, caedis, -ium, F., slaughter, massacre
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide, separate
fīnis, fīnis, -ium, M., end; *pl.* country
gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation, tribe
hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy[1]
quoque, *conj.*, also
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat

a. The noun **hostis** regularly refers to an enemy of a country or nation, while **inimīcus** refers to a personal enemy.

b. The adverb **quoque** never stands at the beginning of a clause. It is put immediately after the word which it emphasizes.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

division final hostile convince

EXERCISES

333. Hoc flūmen fīnēs Gallōrum ā (*from*) Germānīs dīvidit. Gentēs Germānōrum hostēs Gallōrum erant et saepe cum Gallīs bellum gerēbant. Multa oppida eōrum cēpērunt. Tum magna caedēs hominum facta est. Sed Rōmānī in Galliam vēnērunt et Germānōs vīcērunt. Gallōs quoque superāvērunt, et in fīnibus Gallōrum mānsērunt. Posteā multae gentēs Gallōrum sociī Rōmānōrum erant et eōs in bellō jūvērunt. Sed Germānī et Rōmānī numquam sociī aut amīcī erant.

334. 1. This nation has a wide country. 2. The Helvetians also waged war with the Germans. 3. We conquered many enemies and we defended our native country. 4. A high wall separates the field from the forest. 5. I came, I saw, I conquered.

---

[1] Occasionally **hostis** is feminine.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the most important distinction between the third declension nouns of section **331** and those which have previously been given? 2. Decline together **haec gēns.** 3. How do **hostis** and **inimīcus** differ in meaning? 4. What is the position of **quoque** in a clause? 5. What Latin word in the vocabulary of this lesson is often printed at the end of a book?

LESSON LVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE IN *-IUM*

335. The second class of nouns of the third declension has a number which are neuter. The nominative of these ends in **-e** or **-al** or **-ar.** They are declined as follows:

īnsigne, N., *badge,* BASE, **īnsign-**	**calcar,** N., *spur* BASE, **calcār**	**animal,** N., *animal* BASE, **animāl-**	
	Singular		*Endings*
NOM. īnsigne	calcar	animal	—
GEN. īnsignis	calcāris	animālis	**-is**
DAT. īnsignī	calcārī	animālī	**-ī**
ACC. īnsigne	calcar	animal	—
ABL. īnsignī	calcārī	animālī	**-ī**
	Plural		
NOM. īnsignia	calcāria	animālia	**-ia**
GEN. īnsignium	calcārium	animālium	**-ium**
DAT. īnsignibus	calcāribus	animālibus	**-ibus**
ACC. īnsignia	calcāria	animālia	**-ia**
ABL. īnsignibus	calcāribus	animālibus	**-ibus**

a. In addition to having the genitive plural ending **-ium** these nouns differ from the neuter nouns given in section **324** in that the ablative singular ends in **-ī,** and the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia.**

336. VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, -ium, N., animal
calcar, calcāris, -ium, N., spur
incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set on fire, burn
īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium, N., badge, decoration
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion
nāvis, nāvis, -ium, F., ship, boat
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, surrender (*transitive*)

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

animal incendiary incense insignia naval

EXERCISES

337. 1. In hīs locīs multa animālia interfecta sunt. 2. Equus meus calcar magnopere timet. 3. Hī mīlitēs īnsignia habent quod fortiter in bellō pugnāvērunt. 4. Haec legiō castra mūniēbat. 5. Hostēs victī sunt et gladiōs suōs trādidērunt. 6. In patriā nostrā sunt multa et magna flūmina, sed nōn multae nāvēs in hīs flūminibus videntur. 7. Helvētiī oppida sua incendērunt. 8. Rēx quoque fūgit sed in fugā captus est. 9. Nēmō hanc gentem laudābit. 10. Trāns illud flūmen domicilium nostrum erit. 11. Agrōs ejus gentis occupābimus.

338. 1. We saw a large animal in the forest. 2. The boy wounded the horse with the spur. 3. Many ships were built by the lieutenant, and the town was fortified. 4. We saw the badges and weapons of the Gauls. 5. The soldiers of this legion will fight bravely.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the nominative singular endings of neuter nouns which have the genitive plural in **-ium.** 2. In what does the ablative singular of these nouns end? 3. How does the ending of the nominative and accusative plural of these nouns differ from the ending of the same cases of the neuter nouns given in section **324?** 4. Give the nominative and the genitive plural of **legiō** and of **nāvis.** 5. What is meant by "a fire of *incendiary* origin?"

LESSON LVIII

DECLENSION OF *VĪS*: GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

THE DECLENSION OF *VĪS*

339. A few third declension nouns are somewhat irregular. One of these is **vīs,** *force,* which has a different stem in the plural from that appearing in the singular. It is declined as follows:

vīs, *force, violence*; pl., *strength*
BASE, **vī-, vīr-**

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	vīs	vīrēs
GEN.	—	vīrium
DAT.	—	vīribus
ACC.	vim	vīrīs *or* vīrēs
ABL.	vī	vīribus

a. The accusative plural, **vīrīs,** is to be distinguished from the dative and ablative plural of **vir** by the long **ī** of the first syllable. It has no genitive or dative singular.

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

340. Nouns ending in **-tās** and **-tūs** and most nouns ending in **-gō** and **-iō** are feminine.

Nouns ending in **-tor** are masculine.

Nouns ending in **-e, -al, -ar, -n,** and **-t** are neuter.

341. VOCABULARY

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plow
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy
ignis, ignis, -ium, M., fire
mōns, montis, -ium, M., mountain
ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time
urbs, urbis, -ium, F., city
vīs, *see* **339,** F., force, violence; *pl.*, strength

a. The noun **ignis** usually has the ablative **ignī**, although **igne** is sometimes used. It will be possible to decide from the meaning of the sentence in which it occurs whether **ignī** is dative or ablative.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

arable ignite suburban vim

EXERCISES

342. 1. Hostēs urbem sociōrum nostrōrum ignī dēlēvērunt. 2. Vim hostium nōn timēbāmus. 3. Ōlim patria nostra erat terra incognita. 4. Hic puer hodiē in agrō arāvit, et dēfessus est. 5. Altī montēs ex urbe nostrā videntur. 6. Ōlim in hāc urbe erant multa et pulchra templa. 7. Sed barbarī ea templa incendērunt. 8. Frāter meus in hīs montibus multa animālia interfēcit. 9. Illud templum pulchrum ignī dēlētum est. 10. Hic puer vīrēs suās saepe laudat. 11. Multī urbem nostram nōn laudant.

343. 1. Once upon a time this city was destroyed by fire. 2. There is a high mountain on this large island. 3. The Gauls feared the violence of this king. 4. I was plowing in a large field across the river. 5. Why does this man have a badge?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **magna vīs.** 2. Give the nominative and the genitive plural of **vīs** and of **vir.** 3. Give the ablative plural of **vīs** and of **vir.** 4. What endings in the nominative singular of the third declension are found only in neuter nouns? 5. Conjugate **dēleō** in the future indicative active. 6. What is *arable* land?

LESSON LIX

PRESENT INFINITIVE: CONSTRUCTION WITH *JUBEŌ*

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE OF REGULAR VERBS

344. The terminations of the present infinitive, active ıd passive, in the four conjugations are as follows:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
:tive	**-āre**	**-ēre**	**-ere**	**-īre**
ıssive	**-ārī**	**-ērī**	**-ī**	**-īrī**

345. The following table shows the formation and trans-:ion of the present infinitives, active and passive:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	portāre, *to carry*	portārī, *to be carried*
II.	monēre, *to warn*	monērī, *to be warned*
III.	dūcere, *to lead*	dūcī, *to be led*
	capere, *to take*	capī, *to be taken*
IV.	audīre, *to hear*	audīrī, *to be heard*

a. In the third conjugation the present passive infinitive has one syllable less than the present active infinitive.

CONSTRUCTION WITH *JUBEŌ*

346. The verb **jubeō** takes as object an infinitive with its .bject in the accusative. **Eum manēre jubēbimus,** *we shall der him to remain.*

347. VOCABULARY

bor, arboris, F., tree
nturiō, -ōnis, M., centurion
pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm, capture
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussum, order, command
pater, patris, M., father
tēctum, -ī, N., house, roof
tūtus, -a, -um, safe

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

arboreal arbor paternal

FORUM OF POMPEII

EXERCISES

348. 1. Centuriō mīlitēs vīcum barbarōrum dēlēre jubet. 2. Pater meus hunc agrum arārī jussit. 3. Quis illam statuam ibi pōnī jussit? 4. Tēctum amīcī meī ignī dēlētum est. 5. Nostrī illam magnam urbem mox expugnābunt. 6. Vīs barbarōrum ab oppidānīs magnopere timēbātur. 7. In tēctīs nostrīs hodiē manēmus quod via nōn tūta est. 8. Arborēs illīus silvae altae sunt. 9. Hoc oppidum numquam ā barbarīs capiētur. 10. Dēfendere, dēfendī, interficī, mūnīrī, complēre, complērī.

349. 1. We have ordered these animals to be killed. 2. The lieutenant ordered ships to be built in this river. 3. I saw your horse among the trees on the island. 4. The centurion orders the camp to be defended by the soldiers. 5. Your father was a soldier in that war.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the endings of the present passive infinitive in the four conjugations. 2. Give the present infinitives, active and passive, of **expugnō** and **habeō**. 3. What is the rule for the use of the infinitive with **jubeō?** 4. What is the accusative singular of **vīs?** of **vir?** 5. Explain the case of **ignī,** sentence 4, section **348.** 6. What is *arboriculture?*

LESSON LX

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

CLASSES OF THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

0. The adjectives which have been given in the previous ns belong to the first and second declensions. There are many adjectives of the third declension. A few of these : three forms in the nominative, one for each gender, rs have two forms for the nominative, the masculine and nine being the same, and others have only one form in nominative for all three genders. They are accordingly vn as adjectives of three endings, adjectives of two end- and adjectives of one ending.

ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

1. Adjectives of three endings, those which have a rate form for each gender, are declined as follows:

ācer, *bold*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. The number of adjectives of this class is not large.

2. **VOCABULARY**

, **ācris, ācre,** spirited,
ld, sharp
:, **celeris, celere,** swift
s, **collis, -ium,** M., hill
lūna, -ae, F., moon
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, F., cloud
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare
teneō, -ēre, -uī, hold

FORUM OF POMPEII

EXERCISES

348. 1. Centuriō mīlitēs vīcum barbarōrum dēlēre jubet. 2. Pater meus hunc agrum arārī jussit. 3. Quis illam statuam ibi pōnī jussit? 4. Tēctum amīcī meī ignī dēlētum est. 5. Nostrī illam magnam urbem mox expugnābunt. 6. Vīs barbarōrum ab oppidānīs magnopere timēbātur. 7. In tēctīs nostrīs hodiē manēmus quod via nōn tūta est. 8. Arborēs illīus silvae altae sunt. 9. Hoc oppidum numquam ā barbarīs capiētur. 10. Dēfendere, dēfendī, interficī, mūnīrī, complēre, complērī.

349. 1. We have ordered these animals to be killed. 2. The lieutenant ordered ships to be built in this river. 3. I saw your horse among the trees on the island. 4. The centurion orders the camp to be defended by the soldiers. 5. Your father was a soldier in that war.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the endings of the present passive infinitive in the **four conjugations.** 2. Give the present infinitives, active and passive, of **expugnō** and **habeō.** 3. What is the rule for the use of the infinitive **with jubeō?** 4. What is the accusative singular of **vīs?** of **vir?** 5. Explain **the case of ignī,** sentence 4, section **348.** 6. What is *arboriculture?*

LESSON LX

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

CLASSES OF THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

350. The adjectives which have been given in the previous lessons belong to the first and second declensions. There are also many adjectives of the third declension. A few of these have three forms in the nominative, one for each gender, others have two forms for the nominative, the masculine and feminine being the same, and others have only one form in the nominative for all three genders. They are accordingly known as adjectives of three endings, adjectives of two endings, and adjectives of one ending.

ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

351. Adjectives of three endings, those which have a separate form for each gender, are declined as follows:

ācer, *bold*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. The number of adjectives of this class is not large.

352. VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, spirited, bold, sharp
celer, celeris, celere, swift
collis, collis, -ium, M., hill
lūna, -ae, F., moon
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, F., cloud
p[illegible] -āvī, -ātum, pre-
teneō, -ēre,

LESSON LXI

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (Continued): COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

357. Many adjectives of the third declension have the same forms for the masculine and feminine.

omnis, *all*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
GEN.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
DAT.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
ACC.	omnem	omne	omnīs, -ēs	omnia
ABL.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

358. An infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb. When thus used it denotes an action of the same person as the subject of the verb on which it depends. Thus, *He wishes to return.* In this sentence *to return* is a complementary infinitive.

a. This use is the same in English and in Latin, and a few examples have occurred in the preceding exercises.

b. An English infinitive expressing purpose in such phrases as *We came to see you* represents a different usage and cannot be translated by a Latin infinitive.

359. VOCABULARY

ancora, -ae, F., anchor
appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, approach
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, wish, desire
fortis, forte, brave
multitūdō, -inis, F., multitude
omnis, omne, all
paucī, -ae, -a (*plural*), few, a few

a. The masculine plural, **omnēs,** is often used substantively (see section **239**) just as the English *all* is frequently used to mean *every one* (*every person*). Thus, **Omnēs fugiunt,** *all are fleeing.* The neuter plural **omnia** is also used substantively to mean *all things* or *everything.*

b. When used substantively **paucī** means *few* or *a few* (*persons*). Thus, **Paucī manent,** *few remain.* The singular forms of **paucī** are so rare that they may be disregarded.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

anchor fortitude multitude omnipotent

EXERCISES

360. 1. Hī mīlitēs fortēs hostēs superābunt. 2. Puella in urbe manēre cupit quod amīcī ibi sunt. 3. Omnēs oppidānī mīlitēs laudāvērunt. 4. Nāvis ancoram āmīserat et in magnō perīculō erat. 5. Pauca animālia hodiē in silvā vīdimus. 6. Centuriō cum quīnque mīlitibus ex castrīs appropinquābat. 7. Magnam multitūdinem barbarōrum in bellō cēpimus. 8. Epistulam ad patrem meum mittere properābō. 9. Omnēs hunc poētam clārum vidēre cupiunt. 10. Paucī magnum perīculum tum vidēbant, nunc omnēs vident.

361. 1. All your sons are now safe. 2. We shall be defended by the weapons of these brave soldiers. 3. The sailors wished to burn this man's house. 4. The centurion ordered the soldier to approach. 5. The anchors of a few ships have been lost.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline the adjective **fortis.** 2. Give the ablative singular of the phrase **mīles fortis.** 3. What is a complementary infinitive? 4. Give the principal parts of **capiō** and of **cupiō.** 5. Give the genitive plural of **pater** and of **collis.** 6. What is the meaning of *omnivorous?*

LESSON LXII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (Continued)

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

362. Some adjectives of the third declension have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders.

	fēlīx, *fortunate*		**potēns,** *powerful*	
		Singular		
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	fēlīx	fēlīx	potēns	potēns
GEN.	fēlīcis	fēlīcis	potentis	potentis
DAT.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī	potentī
ACC.	fēlīcem	fēlīx	potentem	potēns
ABL.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī, -e	potentī, -e
		Plural		
NOM.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	potentēs	potentia
GEN.	fēlīcium	fēlīcium	potentium	potentium
DAT.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus
ACC.	fēlīcīs, -ēs	fēlīcia	potentīs, -ēs	potentia
ABL.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus

a. The neuter is given separately because it differs from the masculine and feminine in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

363. VOCABULARY

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, cut, cut down
fēlīx, *gen.* **fēlīcis,** fortunate, happy
mors, mortis, F., death
pāx, pācis, F., peace
potēns, *gen.* **-entis,** powerful
retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, restrain
timor, -ōris, M., fear

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

felicitous mortal pacifist impotent retention timorous

EXERCISES

364. 1. Hic rēx fēlīx et potēns erat et multōs sociōs habēbat. 2. Fēlīcēs estis quod in hāc urbe habitātis. 3. Pater hujus rēgis potentis erat mīles fortis. 4. Timor mortis eōs virōs fortēs nōn retinuit. 5. Multōs annōs in illā terrā fuerat pāx. 6. Fīlius agricolae multās arborēs in silvā cecīdit. 7. Multae arborēs ā fīliō agricolae caesae sunt. 8. Post mortem lēgātī centuriō legiōnem dūxit. 9. Propter timōrem perīculī puerī in vīcō manent. 10. Tēctum meum inter hōs collēs aedificābō.

365. 1. Fear of war restrains these men. 2. We are safe because we have powerful friends. 3. Who has cut down this beautiful tree? 4. This woman is happy because she has kind sons. 5. My father's house stands on a high hill.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **urbs fēlīx.** 2. Give the genitive plural of **rēx potēns.** 3. Give the ablative singular of **omnis arbor.** 4. Give a synopsis of **caedō** in the third person singular, active voice, indicative mood. 5. What is the derivation of *omnipotent?*

LESSON LXIII

ABLATIVE OF TIME: GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

366. The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

Eō *annō* pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit, *my father built a new house that year.*

a. Commonly these expressions of time have the preposition *in* or *on* or *at* in English: *in that year; on the same day; at the appointed hour.*

THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

367. With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to denote the whole of that to which the part belongs.

Multī *amicōrum* meōrum, *many of my friends.*

368. VOCABULARY

aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum, open, open up
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, close
lūx, lūcis, F., light; **prīma lūx,** daybreak
māter, mātris, F., mother
nox, noctis, -ium, F., night
pars, partis, -ium, F., part
tempestās, -tātis, F., storm, tempest

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

aperture lucid maternal nocturnal partial tempest

EXERCISES

369. 1. Eā nocte tēctum patris tuī incēnsum est. 2. Lēgātus partem mīlitum in castrīs relīquit. 3. Māter hujus puerī fēlīx est quod praemium eī datum est. 4. Mīlitēs portam statim claudere jussī. 5. Tum lūcem ignis per arborēs vīdimus. 6. Hī hominēs iter novum per montēs aperuērunt. 7. Pars ejus īnsulae tum incognita erat et ferae bēstiae per silvās errābant. 8. Quod legiōnēs appropinquābant, omnēs portās clausimus. 9. Prīmā lūce (*at daybreak*) erat magna tempestās. 10. Portam aperuī et ex oppidō excessī.

370. 1. I gave part of my money to the soldier. 2. On account of the storm we remained in the town. 3. On that night your brother arrived with the messenger. 4. At daybreak there was a great storm.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What case is used for expressions of duration of time? 2. Form two English sentences, one containing an expression of time at which, the other containing an expression of duration of time. 3. Give the rule for the genitive of the whole. 4. Give the ablative singular of **omnis** and **ācer.** 5. What English adjective is connected in derivation with **tempestās?**

LESSON LXIV

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

371. Thus far, the personal pronouns *I*, *you*, *he*, etc. as subjects of the verb have been indicated in Latin by the personal endings of the verb, **-ō, -s, -t,** etc. But when the importance of the subject is emphasized or a contrast is brought out between subjects of different persons, a personal pronoun in the nominative is used in Latin as in English. The other cases than the nominative are used as we should expect, except that the genitive of the pronouns of the first and second persons is not used to denote possession. The possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster, vester** take the place of the genitive in expressions of possession (section **106**). The use of the genitive singular is not common.

DECLENSION OF *EGO* AND *TŪ*

372. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, meaning *I* and *you*, are declined as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
GEN.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as genitives of the whole.

b. The forms **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used with nouns which denote action or feeling to denote the person or thing which stands as object of the action or feeling expressed. They are not employed in the exercises of this book.

373. As has been seen in section **158,** the demonstrative **is** serves as a personal pronoun of the third person, meaning *he, she, it, they,* etc. The nominative may be used for emphasis or when it is needed to make the meaning clear. Sometimes the forms of **hic** and **ille** are used instead of **is** as the pronoun of the third person.

374. VOCABULARY

avis, avis, -ium, F., bird
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, sing
ego, *gen.* **meī,** I
incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin
juxtā, *prep. with acc.*, next to, near
mare, maris, N., **sea** (*for plural see Note a*)
tū, *gen.* **tuī,** you

a. The nominative and accusative **plural** of **mare** is **maria.** It is rarely used in any other case in the plural.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

aviation chant egotist incipient marine

EXERCISES

375. 1. Ego in campō ambulō, tū in urbe manēs. 2. Hī puerī saepe ā tē juvantur. 3. Prīmā lūce omnia ad iter (*for the journey*) parābāmus. 4. Ego in montibus habitō, tū juxtā mare domicilium habēs. 5. Tum avēs in arboribus canere incipiēbant. 6. Pater meus mihi hunc librum dedit. 7. Cūr hic locus nōn est tibi grātus? 8. Juxtā tēctum **meum** est magna arbor. 9. Māter tua semper mare timuit. 10. Multī nostrum mīlitēs esse cupiunt. 11. Centuriō mīlitem accūsat quod is ex proeliō excessit.

376. 1. I love the sea, you praise the mountains. 2. Who gave you this beautiful picture? 3. My brother gave me these books. 4. Many of you condemn this man's acts. 5. This letter was not sent by me. 6. Why do you always blame me?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. When are personal pronouns expressed as subjects of verbs? 2. What sed as the personal pronoun of the third person? 3. Explain the differ- e between the use of **nostrum** and **nostrī**, and of **vestrum** and **vestrī**. What is used instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns to denote ession? 5. What is the nominative plural of **mare**? 6. What is the ning of *juxtaposition?*

THEATER OF POMPEII

LESSON LXV

REFLEXIVES: *CUM* AS ENCLITIC

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

377. A reflexive pronoun is a pronoun which is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative to refer back to the subject of the sentence. It commonly depends upon the verb or upon a predicate adjective.

Nōn *mē* laudō, *I do not praise myself.*
***Tibi* placēs,** *you please yourself.*
***Sē* dēfendit,** *he defends himself.*

a. The reflexive must be distinguished from the intensive **ipse,** which merely emphasizes the word with which it agrees. The reflexive denotes the same person or thing as the subject, but its case depends on some other element of the sentence.

Vir *ipse* amīcum accūsat (intensive), *the man himself accuses his friend.*
Vir *sē* accūsat (reflexive), *the man accuses himself.*

378. In the first and second persons the forms of **ego** and **tū** (excluding, of course, the nominative) serve as reflexives. In the third person there is a reflexive pronoun which has no other uses. It is translated *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves,* as the gender and number of the subject may require.

	Singular	*Plural*
GEN.	suī	suī
DAT.	sibi	sibi
ACC.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē
ABL.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē

THE ENCLITIC USE OF *CUM*

379. With the ablatives **mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs,** and regularly **quibus,** the preposition **cum** is used as an enclitic.

That is, it is added to the pronoun as a final syllable: **mēcum**, *with me;* **tēcum**, *with you,* etc.

380. **VOCABULARY**

caelum, -ī, N., sky
incolō, -ere, -uī, inhabit
laetus, -a, -um, joyful, happy
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh
sapiēns, *gen.* **sapientis,** wise
stella, -ae, F., star
suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

celestial ridicule sapient stellar

EXERCISES

381. 1. Cūr in hīs perīculīs frāter tuus sē nōn dēfendit? 2. Tū tē laudās, ego tē nōn laudō. 3. Mīlitēs sē dēfendent et hostēs superābunt. 4. Ille centuriō sapiēns multōs mīlitēs sēcum habēbat. 5. Puer parvus nōbīscum ambulāre cupit. 6. Quibuscum in viā stābās? 7. Puer saepe rīdet, sed pater ejus nōn laetus est. 8. Iter per montēs angustum et perīculōsum est. 9. Eā nocte multās stellās in caelō per nūbēs vidēbāmus. 10. Ōlim barbarī hās īnsulās incolēbant. 11. Laetī sumus quod tēctum nostrum iterum vidēmus.

382. 1. The boy wounded himself with a sword. 2. Why do you not remain with me in the city? 3. This man condemns himself, and he is condemned by all. 4. All the enemy defended themselves bravely, and many were killed. 5. You are good boys, and I will give you a reward.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Explain the use of the reflexive pronoun. 2. What forms are used as reflexives in the first and second persons? 3. With what forms is the preposition **cum** used as an enclitic? 4. Decline the personal pronoun of the first person. 5. Explain the case of **nocte** in sentence 9, section **381.** 6. With what Latin words is *derision* connected in derivation?

TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON

383. VOCABULARY REVIEW

ancora, -ae, F.
animal, -ālis, N.
arbor, -oris, F.
avis, avis, F.
caedēs, caedis, F.
caelum, -ī, N.
calcar, -āris, N.
centuriō, -ōnis, M.
collis, collis, M.
fīnis, fīnis, M.
gēns, gentis, F.
hostis, hostis, M.
ignis, ignis, M.
īnsigne, īnsignis, N.
legiō, -ōnis, F.
lūna, -ae, F.
lūx, lūcis, F.
mare, maris, N.
māter, mātris, F.
mōns, montis, M.
mors, mortis, F.
multitūdō, -inis, F.
nāvis, nāvis, F.
nox, noctis, F.
nūbēs, nūbis, F.
pars, partis, F.
pater, patris, M.
pāx, pācis, F.
stella, -ae, F.
tēctum, -ī, N.
tempestās, -tātis, F.
timor, -ōris, M.
urbs, urbis, F.
ācer, ācris, ācre
celer, celeris, celere
fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis
fortis, forte
laetus, -a, -um
omnis, omne
paucī, -ae, -a
potēns, *gen.* potentis
sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis
tūtus, -a, -um
ego, meī
suī
tū, tuī
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum
appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum
incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
incolō, -colere, -coluī
jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī -tentum	vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum	ōlim
teneō, -ēre, tenuī	quoque
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum	juxtā

384. EPISTULA PUERĪ

For words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary, page 303.

Hanc epistulam ad tē scrībō quod epistulam ā tē recipere cupiō. Saepe tē vidēre cupiō sed numquam in urbem nostram venīs. Multōs novōs amīcōs hīc repperī, sed nēmō locum tuum in amīcitiā meā habet. Domicilium nostrum est in parte pulchrā urbis, et viae sunt lātae. In viīs multī carrī et equī et hominēs semper videntur. Interdum ex urbe excēdō cum frātribus meīs, et in magnā silvā ambulāmus. Pater meus mihi equum dedit, et hunc tibi ostendam. Item frātrēs meī tē vidēre cupiunt. Valē.

LESSON LXVI

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

385. In the fourth declension the genitive singular ends in **-ūs.** The nominative singular ends in **-us** for the masculine and feminine and in **-ū** for the neuter. Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.

exercitus, M., *army*			**cornū,** N., *horn*		
BASE, **exercit-**			BASE, **corn-**		
		Singular			
		Endings			*Endings*
NOM.	exercitus	**-us**	NOM.	cornū	**-ū**
GEN.	exercitūs	**-ūs**	GEN.	cornūs	**-ūs**
DAT.	exercituī, -ū	**-uī, -ū**	DAT.	cornū	**-ū**
ACC.	exercitum	**-um**	ACC.	cornū	**-ū**
ABL.	exercitū	**-ū**	ABL.	cornū	**-ū**

Plural

NOM.	exercitūs	**-ūs**	NOM.	cornua	**-ua**
GEN.	exercituum	**-uum**	GEN.	cornuum	**-uum**
DAT.	exercitibus	**-ibus**	DAT.	cornibus	**-ibus**
ACC.	exercitūs	**-ūs**	ACC.	cornua	**-ua**
ABL.	exercitibus	**-ibus**	ABL.	cornibus	**-ibus**

a. The dative and ablative plurals of a few masculine and feminine nouns end in **-ubus.**

386. VOCABULARY

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, collect
cornū, -ūs, N., horn; wing (*of an army*)
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy
exercitus, -ūs, M., army
facile, *adv.*, easily
flūctus, -ūs, M., wave
jam, *adv.*, already, now; **nōn jam,** no longer

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

conduct exemption[1] fluctuate

EXERCISES

387. 1. Flūctūs maris altī erant et nāvis in perīculō erat. 2. Hostēs exercitum nostrum nōn facile vincent. 3. Hoc animal cornua longa habet. 4. Exercitus Rōmānus jam in Galliam pervēnerat. 5. Mīlitēs in vīcō frūmentum ēmērunt. 6. Tum rēx hominēs ex omnibus partibus rēgnī suī condūxit. 7. Hostēs nunc appropinquant et hic locus nōn jam tūtus est. 8. Centuriō facile sē gladiō dēfendit. 9. Amīcī nostrī nōbīscum in urbe manēbunt. 10. Pater tuus tibi hunc equum dedit. 11. Hanc pictūram hodiē in urbe ēmī.

388. 1. Our army is not large, but our soldiers are brave. 2. We saw the great waves and were frightened. 3. The lieutenant had collected a large number of soldiers from these towns. 4. We no longer fear the enemy, because we have arms. 5. Part of the army had not yet arrived in camp (*accusative*).

[1] Originally **emō** meant *take out.*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the ending of the genitive singular in the third and fourth declensions. 2. Give the genitive plural of **lēx** and **flūctus.** 3. Decline the personal pronoun of the second person. 4. Form an English sentence which, if translated into Latin, would illustrate the use of the reflexive pronoun of the third person. 5. Form an English sentence which, if translated into Latin, would illustrate the use of **ipse.** 6. What is the meaning of *facility?*

LESSON LXVII

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT: ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

389. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

Mīles amīcum tuum *virtūte* praecēdit, *the soldier surpasses your friend in courage.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

390. The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space.

Puer quīnque *mīlia* passuum ambulāvit, *the boy walked five miles.*

391. VOCABULARY

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround
dux, ducis, M., leader
mīlle, *pl.* **mīlia** (*gen. pl.* **mīlium**), thousand
passus, -ūs, M., pace; **mīlle passūs,** a mile [1]
pateō, -ēre, -uī, extend
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, surpass
virtūs, -tūtis, F., courage

---

[1] The Roman mile was slightly shorter than the English mile.

a. In the singular, **mīlle,** *thousand,* is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a neuter noun of the third declension, with the forms **mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus,** etc. Instead of saying *five thousand men,* as we do in English, the Latin said *five thousands of men,* **quīnque mīlia hominum,** expressing the word for *men* as a genitive of the whole. *Many miles* is in Latin **multa mīlia passuum,** *many thousands of paces,* and **passuum,** like **hominum** above, is a genitive of the whole, while **mīlia** stands in whatever case the sense of the sentence requires.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

circumvent duke mile precede virtue

EXERCISES

392. 1. Gallī Rōmānōs virtūte nōn praecēdēbant. 2. Fīnēs Helvētiōrum multa mīlia passuum patēbant. 3. Castra Germānōrum ā Rōmānīs eā nocte circumventa sunt. 4. Dux ejus exercitūs erat hostis populī Rōmānī. 5. Mārcus frātrem suum ēloquentiā praecessit. 6. Hodiē octō mīlia passuum ambulāvimus, et dēfessī sumus. 7. Dux barbarōrum magnum scūtum gerēbat et sē gladiō dēfendēbat. 8. Puer in itinere canēbat quod laetus erat. 9. Hostēs omnia oppida nostra incendērunt. 10. Nihil in agrīs relictum est.

393. 1. We do not surpass our fathers in courage. 2. This forest extends many miles. 3. This boy is the leader of a large number of boys. 4. We were in great danger because our city had been surrounded by the army of the enemy.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out an example of the ablative of respect in the sentences of section **392.** 2. Give the rule for expressions of extent in space. 3. Explain the use of the numeral **mīlle.** 4. What is the Latin equivalent for *mile?* for *many miles?* 5. From what Latin noun is **virtūs** derived? What literal meaning for **virtūs** does this derivation suggest?

LESSON LXVIII

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

394. The English relative pronoun is *who, which, that,* or *what.* The Latin relative pronoun will be translated by whichever of these the sense of the sentence requires. It is to be distinguished from the interrogative pronoun by the fact that it is used to connect a subordinate clause to some noun or pronoun in a main clause, while an interrogative pronoun introduces a question. Thus, in the sentence *The man who lives in this house is my uncle* the clause *who lives in this house* is connected with *man* by *who,* which is therefore a relative pronoun.

The noun or pronoun to which the subordinate clause is connected by the relative pronoun is the antecedent of the relative.

DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

395. The forms of the Latin relative pronoun are as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

396. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō *quem* vidēs amīcus meus est, *the man whom you see is my friend.*

a. The genitives **cujus, quōrum,** and **quārum** are translated *whose* or *of whom* as the sense of the sentence requires.

397. VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M., citizen
dēpellō, -ere, dēpulī, dēpulsum, ward off
manus, -ūs, F., hand; band (of armed men)
pīlum, ī, N., javelin
prōvincia, -ae, F., province
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that, what
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left-hand

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

civic manual provincial **sinister**

EXERCISES

398. 1. Praemia lēgātō quī oppidum dēfendit **dabuntur.** 2. Cīvēs quōs dēfendistī semper tē laudābunt. 3. **Pīla scūtō** quod gerō dēpellentur. 4. Hic mīles in proeliō manum **sinistram** āmīsit. 5. Puerī quōrum pater in bellō interfectus est amīcī meī sunt. 6. Hī ducēs, quī magnam manum mīlitum condūxerant, bellum gerere cupiēbant. 7. Rōmānī multās prōvinciās habēbant. 8. Gallia erat prōvincia Rōmāna. 9. Multī cīvēs Rōmānī tēcta et agrōs in Galliā habēbant. 10. Pater meus domicilium in eā urbe habet quam vidēs.

399. 1. The letter which you sent was not seen by my brother. 2. The soldier who threw this javelin has been wounded. 3. The soldiers by whom the town is defended are brave. 4. The boy has already walked many miles.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the nominative singular of the relative pronoun in all genders. 2. Give the nominative singular of the interrogative pronoun in the masculine and the neuter. 3. In what kind of clause is the relative pronoun used? 4. Explain the case of **quōs** in sentence 2, section **398.** 5. What is *manual* labor?

RUINS OF THE COLISEUM

LESSON LXIX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

DEGREES OF COMPARISON

400. There are three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative. In English most adjectives form the comparative by adding *-er* to the positive degree, and the superlative by adding *-est*. Thus, *brave, braver, bravest.* Some adjectives instead of adding *-er* and *-est* have *more* placed before the positive for the comparative and *most* for the superlative. Thus, *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful.*

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE IN LATIN

401. In Latin the nominative of the comparative regularly ends in **-ior** for the masculine and feminine and **-ius** for the neuter. The superlative regularly ends in **-issimus** (**-issima, -issimum**). These endings (**-ior, -ius, -issimus,** etc.) replace the genitive ending of the positive degree.

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātus *wide*	lātior, lātius *wider*	lātissimus, -a, -um *widest*
fortis *brave*	fortior, fortius *braver*	fortissimus, -a, -um *bravest*
grātus *pleasing*	grātior, grātius *more pleasing*	grātissimus, -a, -um *most pleasing*

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

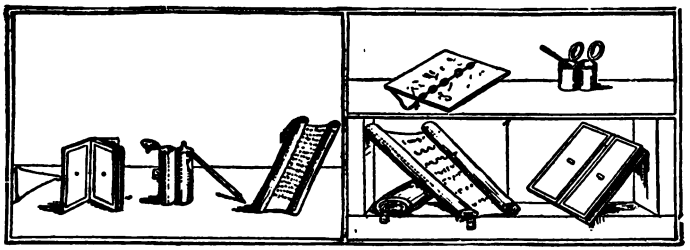
402. The comparatives are third declension adjectives of two endings and are declined as follows:

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs, (-īs)	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

a. The superlative is declined like **bonus.**

403. VOCABULARY

contrā, *prep. with acc.,* against
dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, right-hand
hasta, -ae, F., spear
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hinder
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, read
lībertās, -tātis, F., liberty, freedom
piscis, piscis, -ium, M., fish



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

contradict dexterity impede legible liberty

EXERCISES

404. 1. Mīlitēs fortiōrēs mittēmus, quī nōn fugient. 2. Hoc iter est longius, sed tūtiōrēs erimus. 3. Mīlitēs fortissimī in eō proeliō interfectī sunt. 4. Liber quem legēbam est tuus. 5. Barbarī longiōrēs hastās habent, sed nōs nōn timēmus. 6. In illō flūmine sunt multī piscēs. 7. Contrā rēgem Rōmānī exercitum mīsērunt. 8. Legiō Gallōs superābat quī in flūmine impediēbantur. 9. Cornū sinistrum exercitūs superātum est. 10. Omnēs lībertātem amant.

405. 1. We have seen the most famous city of Italy. 2. I shall send a longer letter today. 3. The mountains are higher and the rivers are broader in our country. 4. My dearest friend lives in the same (**295**) town in which you live.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Name the three degrees of comparison. 2. How are most English adjectives compared? 3. What ending is regularly used to form the comparative of Latin adjectives? What ending to form the superlative? 4. Decline the relative pronoun. 5. Explain the case of **mīlitēs** and of **quī** in sentence 1 of section **404.** 6. What English word is derived from the past participle of **legō**?

LESSON LXX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued): ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER*

406. Adjectives which end in **-er** in the masculine form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the masculine nominative singular instead of by taking the ending **-issimus.**

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
miser, -a, -um	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer, -cris, -cre	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

a. The comparative is formed like that of other adjectives.

THE MEASURE OR DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE WITH COMPARATIVES

407. Often when two things are compared, a word or phrase is used to denote the measure or degree of difference between them. Thus, *This road is two miles shorter than the other* (*shorter than the other by two miles*). In this sentence the phrase *two miles* is the measure of difference between the two things compared.

THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

408. The measure or degree of difference is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition.

Hoc iter sex *mīlibus* passuum longius est quam illud, *this road is six miles longer than that.*

In this sentence **mīlibus** is an ablative of degree of difference.

a. A frequent use of this construction is to be seen in **multō,** the ablative of the neuter **multum,** used as a noun. Thus, ***multō* clārior,** *much more famous* (*more famous by much*).

409. VOCABULARY

ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum, ascend
dē, *prep. with abl.,* down from, from; concerning
impetus, -ūs, M., attack
pēs, pedis, M., foot
prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, grasp
quam, *conj.,* than; *adv.,* as, how
tempus, temporis, N., time

a. The distinction between **ab, dē,** and **ex** in their literal meanings is as follows: **ab** means *away from,* **dē** means *down from,* **ex** means *out from.* Frequently *from* alone is used to translate each of them, but usually with the understood sense as above. Often **dē** means *concerning.*

b. A noun or pronoun used after **quam** meaning *than* is compared with some noun or pronoun in the earlier part of the sentence, and its case is the same as that of the noun or pronoun with which it is compared.

Hic puer est fortior quam *frāter,* this boy is braver than his brother.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

ascent impetuous comprehend comprehension pedal pedestrian temporal

EXERCISES

410. 1. Is homō miserrimus omnium erat. 2. Haec urbs est pulcherrima omnium urbium Galliae. 3. Haec arbor sex pedibus altior est quam illa (*arbor*). 4. Flūmen est multīs pedibus lātius quam fossa. 5. Sociī nostrī sunt multō fortiōrēs quam hostēs. 6. Oppidānī dē mūrō tēla et saxa jaciēbant. 7. Tum mīles hastam prehendit et fortiter vāllum ascendit. 8. Hostēs quī in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt superātī sunt. 9. Illō tempore hanc urbem non vīderam. 10. Equum celerrimum quem habeō ad tē mittam.

411. 1. We have seen the most beautiful cities of : 2. The father of this boy is the most unhappy of all. 3. tree is many feet higher than the wall. 4. The ditch is : wider than the road (**via**). 5. The leader will bring (**dū** the swiftest horses and the bravest soldiers.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Compare **pulcher.** 2. Point out an example of the ablative of of difference in the sentences of section **410.** 3. What is the disti between **ab, dē,** and **ex** in their literal meanings? 4. Compare **long potēns.** 5. What determines the gender and number of a relativ noun? the case? 6. What is the meaning of *extempore?* From wh Latin words is it derived?

THIRTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

412. (1) Third declension adjectives with one endi
(2) Third declension adjectives with two enc
(3) The complementary infinitive.
(4) The use of **mille.**
(5) The ablative of time.
(6) The genitive of the whole.
(7) Personal pronouns.
(8) Reflexive pronouns.
(9) The fourth declension.
(10) The ablative of respect.
(11) The accusative of extent.
(12) The relative pronoun.
(13) Agreement of the relative.
(14) The regular comparison of adjectives.
(15) The comparison of adjectives in **-er.**
(16) The ablative of degree of difference.

413. Define the following English words and give l words with which they are connected in derivation:

anchor	exemption	multitude
aperture	felicitous	nocturnal
ascend	fluctuate	omnipotent
aviation	fortitude	pacifist
celestial	impede	partial
chant	impetuous	pedal
circumvent	impotent	precede
civic	incipient	province
comprehend	legible	retention
comprehension	liberty	ridicule
conduct	lucid	sinister
contradict	manual	stellar
cupidity	marine	tempest
dexterity	maternal	temporal
duke	mile	timorous
egotist	mortal	virtue

114. VIR CLĀRUS ET RĒGĪNA SAPIĒNS

For words which have not previously occurred see Final Vocabulary, page 303.

Haec terra in quā habitāmus ā virō clārō reperta est cujus ria erat Italia. Nāvēs eī ā rēgīnā Hispāniae datae sunt. rēgīna sapiēns pecūniam quoque huic virō dedit. Ā[1] ibus is auxilium postulāverat, sed nēmō ex hīs rēgibus n audīverat. Ea rēgīna erat sapientior[2] quam omnēs illī ēs. Posteā hic vir fortis ā multīs laudātus est et dōna eī a sunt. Sed post mortem rēgīnae male tractātus est et errimus erat. Quis erat hic vir clārus et quae erat ea ina sapiēns quae eum jūvit?

---

[1] *From.*
[2] Comparative of **sapiēns.**

LESSON LXXI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

COMPARISON OF FIVE ADJECTIVES IN *-LIS*

415. The following adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-limus**: **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, humilis.**

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
facilis	**facilior, -ius**	**facillimus, -a, -um**
similis	**similior, -ius**	**simillimus, -a, -um**

a. Other adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative regularly with **-issimus.**[1]

TRANSLATION OF THE SUPERLATIVE WITH "VERY"

416. Sometimes the superlative is translated by *very* with the positive degree instead of by the superlative. Thus, **Montem altissimum vīdimus,** *we saw a very high mountain.* It will be possible to determine from the rest of the sentence whether the English superlative or the form with *very* is needed to translate a Latin superlative in any particular instance.

417. VOCABULARY

difficilis, -e, difficult
dissimilis, -e, dissimilar, unlike
efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish
facilis, -e, easy
humilis, -e, low
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reign, rule (as king)
similis, -e, like, similar

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

difficulty dissimilar efficient humility **similar**

---

[1] **gracilis,** *slender,* is sometimes given in this list of adjectives, but its superlative is so rare as to make it of little importance.

EXERCISES

. 1. Pater hujus virī multōs annōs (section **233**) rēg- et ab omnibus amātus est. 2. Legiō in locō difficillimō ibat sed hostēs superābat. 3. Hoc iter erat facilli- sed longissimum erat. 4. Hī puerī similēs sunt sed uam amīcī fuērunt. 5. Arma Rōmānōrum et arma ōrum sunt dissimillima. 6. Is mūrus quem vidēs humil- est. 7. Virtūs patrum nostrōrum saepe laudāta est. serrimī hōrum puerōrum ex urbe tuā vēnērunt. 9. Quid tus parvus tuus efficiet? 10. Fīlius centuriōnis sēcum m frātrem dūcit.

. 1. This route is the most difficult and the longest. e towns in which we live are very similar. 3. Victory very easy because the enemy had not many soldiers. ese parts of Gaul are very unlike. 5. The enemy were brave, but our army defeated them. 6. Seven kings d in this city, but not all were good kings.

SUGGESTED DRILL

Name the five adjectives which form their superlatives with **-limus.** npare **miser.** 3. Decline the comparative of **facilis.** 4. Explain m **sēcum** in sentence 10, section **418.** 5. Give two English words are derived from the past participle of **efficiō.**

ROMAN DRINKING CUPS

LESSON LXXII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued): DECLENSION OF *PLŪS*

ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

420. There are a few adjectives which form their comparatives and superlatives irregularly. The most important are the following:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	pejor, -jus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	———, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF *PLŪS*

421. **Plūs** is an adjective in the plural, but in the singular it is a neuter noun. It is declined as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*	
	Neut.	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	———	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	plūs	plūrīs *or* -ēs	plūra
ABL.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

422. VOCABULARY

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive
lacus, -ūs, M., lake
malus, -a, -um, bad
mōs, mōris, M., custom
prōcēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, advance, proceed
reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

accept moral procession relic

EXERCISES

423. 1. Hic vir numquam nōbīs malum cōnsilium dat. 2. Mōrēs in hāc urbe illō tempore pessimī erant. 3. Urbs vestra major est quam nostra (urbs) sed maximae urbēs nōn semper sunt pulcherrimae. 4. Minimam partem aurī in oppidō rēx relīquit. 5. Tum nūntius subitō prōcessit et epistulam quam ā frātre meō accēperat mihi dedit. 6. Hic lacus est inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et prōvinciam nostram. 7. Helvētiī erant fortiōrēs quam reliquī Gallī et saepe cum Germānīs bellum gessērunt. 8. Pater meus semper optimōs librōs lēgit. 9. Plūrēs hominēs in viā mox vidēbuntur. 10. Arma Gallōrum et Germānōrum simillima erant.

424. 1. I have received a very large reward and I am happy. 2. The danger was very small, but many were frightened. 3. We have sent our bravest soldiers and our best leader. 4. In the lake which we saw there are many large fish.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Explain the difference between the use of the comparative of **multus** in the singular and in the plural. 2. Decline the comparative of **magnus.** 3. What is the meaning of the English words *maximum, minimum, pessimist,* and *optimist?* 4. Compare **similis.** 5. Decline **lacus.**[1] 6. What do you think is the probable meaning of the French noun *mal?*

LESSON LXXIII

ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE IN *-ĪUS*

425. There are nine adjectives which have the genitive singular ending in **-īus** and the dative singular ending in **-ī.** In the other cases of the singular and in all the cases of the plural they have the same endings as adjectives of the first

---

[1] The dative and ablative plural end in *-ubus.* See section **385** *a.*

and second declensions. Most of these words are used also as pronouns. They are as follows:

alius, alia, aliud, another
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only
ūllus, -a, -um, any
ūnus, -a, um, one
tōtus, -a, -um, whole
nūllus, -a, -um, no

alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*)
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither
uter, utra, utrum, which (*of two*)

426. These adjectives are declined as follows:

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
G.	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
D.	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

Plural

sōlī	sōlae	sōla, *etc.*	alterī	alterae	altera, *etc.*

a. **Alius** has the neuter **aliud.** Otherwise it is declined like the remaining words of the group. The **ī** of the genitive ending of **alter** is sometimes short (**alterius**).

b. The genitive and ablative of **nūllus** are used to supply the place of the missing genitive and ablative of **nēmō** (**326,** *a*).

EXERCISES

427. 1. Ūnum virum et quīnque puerōs vīdimus. 2. Alter fūgit, sed mox captus est. 3. Aliī in oppidō mānsērunt et sē dēfendērunt. 4. In aliā parte lacūs est magna īnsula. 5. Mūrus neutrīus oppidī altus est. 6. Utrī puellae dōnum dedistī? 7. Hic vir rēx esse tōtīus Galliae cupīvit. 8. Minimī puerī

hodiē, in vīcō manēbunt. 9. Victōria erit nostra, sed nōn erit victōria facillima. 10. Nūllīus īnsulae; lēgātō sōlī; ūllīus morae; alterīus locī.

428. 1. The nature of the whole island was unknown. 2. He will give the letter to the messenger alone. 3. Many fight bravely, others hasten from the camp. 4. This boy has no book. 5. The danger of neither is great.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Name the adjectives which have the genitive in **-īus.** 2. Decline **neuter** in full. 3. Decline together **nūlla īnsula.** 4. What is the neuter nominative singular of **alius?** of **ūllus?** 5. Compare **altus, miser,** and **difficilis.** 6. Give English words which are connected in derivation with **sōlus, ūnus, tōtus,** and **nūllus.**

LESSON LXXIV

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION: ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

DESCRIPTIVE PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

429. In English we frequently use a phrase with *of* to describe a noun. Thus, *A man of good judgment; a story of great length.* In the first of these expressions the phrase *of good judgment* describes *man,* in the second, the phrase *of great length* describes *story.*

Sometimes we use *with* instead of *of* to introduce descriptive phrases. *A man with a good reputation; the house with a red roof.* In the first of these expressions, *with a good reputation* describes *man,* in the second, *with a red roof* describes *house.*

DESCRIPTIVE USE OF CASES IN LATIN

430. In Latin both the genitive and the ablative (without a preposition) are used to describe by telling some quality or some fact about the appearance of a person or thing. Frequently the ablative when thus used is translated with *of,*

like the genitive. The rules regarding the use of the two cases are given in the following sections.

THE GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

431. The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. This is called the Genitive of Description.

Homō *magnae virtūtis,* *a man of great courage.*

a. The genitive is often employed in this construction to express measure.

Mūrus *quattuor pedum,* *a four-foot wall (a wall of four feet).*

THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

432. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. This is called the Ablative of Description.

Homō *magnā virtūte,* *a man of great courage,* i.e., *a man with great courage.*

a. In many phrases such as the example above, either the genitive or the ablative may be used, but physical characteristics are usually expressed bv the ablative, and measure always by the genitive.

433. VOCABULARY

altitūdō, -inis, F., height, depth
auctōritās, -tātis, F., influence, authority
Caesar, -aris, M., Caesar, *a famous Roman*
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say
lātitūdō, -inis, F., width
modus, -ī, M., manner, kind
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repulse

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

altitude dictionary latitude mode repe

EXERCISES

434. 1. Is dux erat (homō) magnā auctōritāte inter Helvētiōs. 2. Flūmen magnā lātitūdine fīnēs Gallōrum et Germānōrum dīvīsit. 3. Numquam anteā in locō ejus modī fuerāmus. 4. Cūr nōn hominem magnae virtūtis (magnā virtūte) ad hoc bellum mīsistis? 5. Vāllum castrōrum nostrōrum nōn est magnā altitūdine. 6. Hostēs repellentur et multī eōrum interficientur. 7. Id dīxī quod amīcus tuus sum. 8. Caesar in Galliā bellum novem annōs gessit. 9. Maximae gentēs Galliae ab eō victae sunt. 10. Tōtam urbem dēlēre cupis. 11. Impetum ūnīus legiōnis nōn timēmus.

435. 1. These rivers are of great depth. 2. The soldiers were of great courage, and they defended the camp bravely. 3. Boys of this kind are not often praised. 4. A march of five hours was made by the army. 5. No towns of the enemy had been burned by our soldiers.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What prepositions are commonly used in descriptive phrases in English? 2. What cases are used in Latin as the equivalent of these phrases? 3. What sort of descriptive idea is always expressed by the genitive? 4. Point out an ablative of description in the sentences of section **434**; a genitive of description. 5. What is the difference between the meanings of **alius** and of **alter**? 6. From what two Latin words is *contradict* derived?

LESSON LXXV

THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS

436. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives by the use of certain adverbial endings. Those derived from adjectives of the first and second declension regularly take **-ē** in place of the genitive ending of the adjective. Those derived from third declension adjectives regularly have **-ter** or **-iter** (**-er**

only, if the genitive ending follows **-nt**) in place of the genitive ending.

lātus, *wide*	lātē, *widely*
fortis, *brave*	fortiter, *bravely*
audāx, *bold*	audācter, *boldly*
prūdēns, *prudent*	prūdenter, *prudently*

a. The neuter accusative singular of some adjectives is used as an adverb: **facile,** *easily*; **multum,** *much.*

b. The adverb of **magnus** is **magnopere; of bonus, bene.** Some adverbs do not have a corresponding adjective; one of these is **saepe,** *often.*

437. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, -ae, F., friendship
commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, mention
lātē, *adv.*, widely, far and wide
nōmen, nōminis, N., name
satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently
validus, -a, -um, strong
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

commemorate nominate satisfy invalid devastate

EXERCISES

438. 1. Helvētiī, quī in fīnēs nostrōs pervēnerant, agrōs lātē vāstābant. 2. Haec legiō celeriter ad flūmen prōcessit. 3. Nostrī fortiter pugnāvērunt et hostēs reppulērunt. 4. Hic puer est validus, sed nōn labōrat. 5. Nōmen tuum saepe ā frātre meō audīvī. 6. Caesar saepe fortia facta mīlitum suōrum commemorat. 7. Amīcitia tua mihi grāta est et semper grāta erit. 8. Cōpiās satis magnās nōn habēmus. 9. Auctōritātem hujus modī multī habēre cupiunt. 10. Virum magnā auctōritāte in prōvinciam mīsimus.

439. 1. The fields of the Gauls have been laid waste far

nd wide. 2. We fight bravely because we are fighting for prō) liberty. 3. The Gauls had often heard Caesar's name. . Our fathers inhabited one part of this island. 5. On ccount of the delay of one legion the whole army was efeated.

IMAGE OF THE GODDESS CYBELE

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. From what part of speech are most Latin adverbs formed? 2. What s the adverb corresponding to **magnus?** to **bonus?** 3. What form of the djective is sometimes used as an adverb? 4. What ending is frequently sed in English to form adverbs? 5. Explain the case of **auctōritāte** in entence 10, section **438.** 6. Give two English words which are connected n derivation with **satis.**

FOURTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

440. VOCABULARY REVIEW

altitūdō, -inis, F.
amīcitia, -ae, F.
auctōritās, -tātis, F.
cīvis, cīvis, M.
cornū, -ūs, N.
dux, ducis, M.
exercitus, -ūs, M.
flūctus, -ūs, M.
hasta, -ae, F.
impetus, -ūs, M.
lacus, -ūs, M.
lātitūdō, -inis, F.
lībertās, -tātis, F.
manus, -ūs, F.
modus, -ī, M.
mōs, mōris, M.
nōmen, nōminis, N.
passus, -ūs, M.
pēs, pedis, M.
pīlum, -ī, N.
piscis, piscis, M.
prōvincia, -ae, F.
tempus, temporis, N.
virtūs, -tūtis, F.
alius, -a, -ud
alter, altera, alterum
dexter, dextra. dextrum
difficilis, -e
dissimilis, -e
facilis, -e
humilis, -e
malus, -a, -um
neuter, -tra, -trum
nūllus, -a, -um
reliquus, -a, -um
similis, -e
sinister, -tra, -trum
sōlus, -a, -um
tōtus, -a, -um
ūllus, -a, -um
ūnus, -a, -um
uter, utra, utrum
validus, -a, -um
mīlle

quī, quae, quod
accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum
circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
dēpello, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum
pateō, -ēre, -uī
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsúm
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

lātē	satis	contrā
quam	subitō	dē

EPISTULA PUELLAE

words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary, 03.

nc epistulam ad tē scrībō ā parvā īnsulā in lacū ubi t pater meus et māter et frāter domicilium aestāte[1] nus. Locus est pulcher et numquam laetior in ūllō locō Amīcus patris meī habet domicilium in alterā īnsulā est in eōdem lacū. Domicilium ejus ex īnsulā nostrā vidētur. Sunt duae parvae fīliae ibi et cum eīs saepe lō et lūdō. Interdum flōrēs[2] invenīmus quās ad mātrēs ās portāmus. Hieme[3] rūrsus in urbe erimus, et tum tē ō. Valē.

---

summer. The nominative is **aestās**.
e nominative is **flōs**.
winter. The nominative is **hiems**.

LESSON LXXVI

THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

442. The comparative of an adverb is the same as the accusative singular neuter form of the comparative of the adjective from which the adverb is derived. The superlative is formed by changing the ending **-us** of the superlative of the corresponding adjective to **-ē.**

	Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
Adj.	lātus	lātior	lātissimus
Adv.	lātē	lātius	lātissimē
Adj.	ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
Adv.	ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
Adj.	facilis	facilior	facillimus
Adv.	facile	facilius	facillimē

a. It must be remembered that the termination **-ter** (**-iter**) in such adverbs as **ācriter, fortiter,** etc., does not appear in the comparative and superlative of these adverbs.

443. VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be distant
ācriter, *adv.*, fiercely, spiritedly
Āfrica, -ae, F., Africa
decem, *indeclinable numeral,* ten
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, save
tot, *indeclinable adj.*, so many
vulnus, vulneris, N., wound

a. The verb **absum** is conjugated like **sum** (of which it is a compound) with **ab** prefixed. Thus **absum, abes,** etc., *imperfect* **aberam,** etc., *future* **aberō,** etc. Before f, in the perfect system and in the future participle, the prefix is **ā** instead of **ab.**

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

absent decimal conservation vulnerable

EXERCISES

444. 1. Hibernia ab Āfricā longissimē abest. 2. Hostēs facilius repellēmus quod arma eōrum nōn bona sunt. 3. Barbarī impetum in nostrōs ācerrimē fēcērunt, et multōs eōrum interfēcērunt. 4. Eōs montēs in quibus haec animālia reperiuntur lātius explōrābimus. 5. Centuriō propter multa vulnera vix stābat. 6. Urbem ex magnō perīculō servāvī. 7. Oppidum nostrum decem mīlia passuum ā flūmine abest. 8. Cūr lēgātus tot mīlitēs in hōc parvō vīcō relīquit? 9. In hīs montibus est lacus magnā altitūdine (*depth*). 10. Hic centuriō satis fortis nōn est, et alius cum legiōne mittētur.

445. 1. We shall see the village very easily from this hill. 2. The soldiers who were farthest away have not yet arrived. 3. The ship was lost, but ten sailors have been saved. 4. My brother received many wounds in battle and was captured. 5. Your father was a good citizen and had many friends.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Compare **lātē** and **fortiter.** 2. Compare **facile.** 3. Give a synopsis of **absum** in the third person plural, indicative mood. 4. Explain the case of **mīlia** in sentence 7, section **444.** 5. Explain the case of **altitūdine** in sentence 9, section **444.** 6. Give some English words which are derived from compounds of **servō.**

LESSON LXXVII

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (Continued): ADVERBS USED IN THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS DERIVED FROM IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

446. Adverbs derived from adjectives which form their comparative and superlative irregularly usually follow the general rule for comparison. That is, their comparatives and superlatives are derived from the comparatives and superla-

tives of the adjectives from which the adverbs are formed. A few adverbs which are not derived from adjectives have their comparatives and superlatives formed with the regular terminations.

Positive		*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bene,	*well*	melius	optimē
male,	*badly*	pejus	pessimē
magnopere,	*greatly*	magis	maximē
multum,	*much*	plūs	plurinum
parum,	*little*	minus	minimē
prope,	*near*	propius	proximē
saepe,	*often*	saepius	saepissimē
diū,	*long*	diūtius	diūtissimē

COMPARISON WITH *MAGIS* AND *MAXIMĒ*

447. Some adjectives do not use the endings for the comparative which have been given in section **401.** Instead they express the comparative degree by using **magis,** *more,* as a modifier, and the superlative by using **maximē,** *most,* in like manner. Thus, **idōneus,** *suitable,* **magis idōneus,** *more suitable,* **maximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

a. The number of adjectives thus compared in the vocabulary used in this book is small. It may be assumed that an adjective is compared regularly unless its use in the Latin exercises shows the contrary.

448. VOCABULARY

bene, *adv.,* well
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play
itaque, and so, accordingly
male, *adv.,* badly
Ōceanus, -ī, M., the ocean
Rōma, -ae, F., Rome

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

benefit delude delusion malevolent oceanic

EXERCISES

449. 1. Hic agricola semper bene arat, et multum frūmentum habēbit. 2. Hoc bellum ab illō lēgātō male gestum est. 3. In locō magis idōneō castra pōnēmus. 4. Minus saepe ad mē scrībis quam ego ad tē (scrībō). 5. Tempestātēs in Ōceanō magnae et perīculōsae sunt. 6. Exercitus hostium propius vēnit et mox erit proelium. 7. Sociī Rōmānōrum in perīculō erant; itaque Caesar auxilium mīsit. 8. Māter abest et puerī in viā lūdunt. 9. Semper inter nōs Gallōsque fuit pāx. 10. Rōma erat maxima et pulcherrima urbs tōtīus Italiae.

450. 1. This place is the most suitable for the camp (*dative*). 2. Why do you not write to me more often? 3. I have received one letter from you this year. 4. The river is not far distant from this place. 5. We shall very easily defeat the Gauls, and we shall seize their lands (**agrōs**).

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What adverbs are sometimes used in the comparison of adjectives? 2. Compare **idōneus**. 3. What is the tense of **vēnit** in sentence 6, section **449**. 4. Conjugate **absum** in the imperfect indicative. 5. What is the meaning of *benefactor?* From what two Latin words is it derived?

LESSON LXXVIII

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

USE OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

451. The English present active participle ends in *-ing*. Thus, *The boy wearing a gray coat is my brother*. In this sentence *wearing* is a present active participle, telling something about the noun *boy*.

There is also a present passive participle in English. Thus, *The ship now being built is very large*. In this sentence *being built* is a present passive participle. Latin has a present active participle, but no present passive participle.

The use of the present active participle as a modifier ◄ noun must not be confused with the progressive form of verb (section **127**). In the sentence *The man is standing the wall* the expression *is standing* is the progressive form the verb, and will be translated by one Latin word. In t sentence *The man standing on the wall is a soldier, the* wo *standing* is a participle, modifying *man.*

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

452. The present active participle of a Latin verb en in **-ns,** and is formed on the present stem. Its formation the regular verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portō	**moneō**	**dūcō**	**capiō**	**audiō**
portāns,	**monēns,**	**dūcēns,**	**capiēns,**	**audiēns,**
carrying	*warning*	*leading*	*taking*	*hearin*

DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

453. Like the other participles, the present particip agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronou which it modifies. It is declined as an adjective of the thi declension with the stem ending in **-nt.**

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
	Singular	
NOM.	portāns	portāns
GEN.	portantis	portantis
DAT.	portantī	portantī
ACC.	portantem	portāns
ABL.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)
	Plural	
NOM.	portantēs	portantia
GEN.	portantium	portantium
DAT.	portantibus	portantibus
ACC.	portantīs (-ēs)	portantia
ABL.	portantibus	portantibus

VOCABULARY

s, **-e,** short
s, **cohortis, -ium,** F., ıort
ıl, **cōnsulis,** M., consul *e of the two chief magis- 'es at Rome)*
dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose
implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, implore
respōnsum, -ī, N., reply
vōx, vōcis, F., voice

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

ty consular implore response

EXERCISES

. 1. Accūsāns; implōrāns; mūnientēs; jacientēs; dū-
s. 2. Vōcēs captīvōrum auxilium implōrantium audiē-
ır. 3. Nostrī in hostēs collem ascendentēs impetum
r fēcērunt. 4. Novum ducem dēligēmus et cum reli-
cohortibus prōcēdēmus. 5. Lēgātus Rōmānus ā Gallīs
·oeliō interfectus est. 6. Tum cōnsul hoc respōnsum
ɔus patriae dedit: "Vōs nōn timeō, et patriam meam
ɜr dēfendam." 7. Gladiī mīlitum Rōmānōrum breviōrēs
quam gladiī Gallōrum. 8. Multī nostrum (section **369**)
ım numquam vīdērunt, sed nōmen ejus saepe audīvimus.
ıllus ex castrīs excēdēns ā centuriōne vīsus est.

. 1. The fleeing soldier was wounded by an arrow.
ıe boy wandering in the forest saw a large animal.
ıe enemy made an attack on the cohort fortifying the
. 4. An arrow wounded the soldier advancing from the
. 5. The voices of the soldiers coming with the baggage
heard by the enemy.

SUGGESTED DRILL

In what does the nominative singular of the present participle end? what stem is it formed? 3. Give the present participles of **implōrō, cupiō,** and **mūniō,** with English meanings. 4. Explain the case of **antium** in sentence 2, section **455.** 5. Give the ablative singular **ris.** 6. What is *vocal* music?

LESSON LXXIX

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

THE INDEPENDENT PARTICIPIAL PHRASE

457. A phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun and a participle is sometimes used in a sentence without being closely connected with any other word in the sentence. Thus, *A new leader having been chosen, we may expect better results.* In this sentence the phrase *a new leader having been chosen* is not directly connected with any word in the rest of the sentence. Such a phrase is said to be independent of the rest of the sentence.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

458. The case which is used in Latin for such independent constructions is the ablative. In the sentence given above as an example the word for *leader* would be put in the ablative in Latin and the participle for *having been chosen* would agree with it in gender, number, and case. This use of the ablative is called the Ablative Absolute.

Duce captō **hostēs fūgērunt,** *the leader having been captured, the enemy fled.*

Filiis meis laudātis **laetus sum,** *my sons having been praised, I am happy.*

a. The participle used in agreement with the noun or pronoun of the ablative absolute may be the past participle, as in the sentences which have been given, or it may be the present participle.

Barbaris prōcēdentibus **nostrī arma parābant,** *the barbarians advancing, our men prepared arms.*

b. The participle of the ablative absolute is past to denote an act taking place before the time of the verb of the clause, but present to denote an act taking place at the same time as that of the verb.

459. Often an adjective or another noun is used instead of a participle as the second part of the ablative absolute construction.

***Amīcō meō invītō* diūtius nōn manēbō,** *my friend (being) unwilling, I shall not remain longer.*
***Caesare duce* mīlitēs semper fortiter pugnābant,** *Caesar (being) leader, the soldiers always fought bravely.*

a. The participle *being,* which is often used in translating an ablative absolute of which the second part is an adjective or a noun, has no equivalent in Latin.

b. The original force of the ablative in this construction may be seen if these phrases are translated with the preposition *with.*

duce captō, *with the leader captured*
fīliīs meīs laudātīs, *with my sons praised*
barbarīs prōcēdentibus, *with the barbarians advancing*
amīcō meō invītō, *with my friend unwilling*
Caesare duce, *with Caesar (as) leader*

FREE TRANSLATION OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

460. In English, independent phrases which correspond to ıe literal translation of the ablative absolute are not very ten used. It is, therefore, frequently necessary to translate e ablative absolute by a clause introduced by *when, after, since,* or *although,* as the sense of the main clause may ggest.

Monte occupātō, *when the mountain had been seized.*
Duce captō, *after the leader had been captured.*

a. Various prepositional phrases, also, may be employed in translating this ablative.

Gallīs invītīs, *against the will of the Gauls.*
Caesare cōnsule, *in the consulship of Caesar.*

461. VOCABULARY

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, find out; *perf.*, know
gravis, -e, heavy
imperātor, -ōris, M., general, commander
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling
Labiēnus, -ī, M., Labienus, a *Roman name*
praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, send ahead

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

recognize gravity emperor

EXERCISES

462. 1. Eā epistulā acceptā Caesar bellum gerere parābat. 2. Duce interfectō mīlitēs repulsī sunt. 3. Cōnsiliō hostium cognitō nostrī castra mūnīvērunt. 4. Nunc agricolae in agris arāre incipiunt. 5. Centuriōne praemissō imperātor in castrīs manēbat. 6. Caesare invītō Helvētiī per prōvinciam iter nōn fēcērunt. 7. Labiēnō duce cohortēs collem ascendent. 8. Nūbēs sunt gravēs, et tempestās appropinquat. 9. Hostēs tēla in (*upon*) mīlitēs castra dēfendentēs jēcērunt. 10. In hōc locō diūtius manēre cupimus.

463. 1. After Labienus had been sent ahead (see section **460**), Caesar advanced with the remaining legions. 2. With Caesar as leader the soldiers fought bravely. 3. When the king had been killed (*not a clause in Latin*), the enemy fled. 4. When the danger was seen, all hastened into the city. 5. The enemy having been repulsed, the city is now safe.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Translate the examples of the ablative absolute in section **462** literally, then suggest clauses which are equivalent to these literal translations. 2. Name four different uses of the ablative. 3. Explain the form **dēfendentēs** in sentence 9, section **462**. 4. Give the present active and the past passive participles of **mittō**. 5. Give the genitive plural of **gravis**. 6. What is meant by "a *grave* danger"?

LESSON LXXX

THE FIFTH DECLENSION: SYNONYMS

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

464. The genitive singular of the fifth declension ends in **-ēī** (after a consonant **-eī**). The nominative singular ends in **-ēs.**

diēs, *day* — BASE, **di-**
rēs, *thing* — BASE, **r-**

	Singular		*Endings*	*Plural*		*Endings*
NOM.	diēs	rēs	**-ēs**	diēs	rēs	**-ēs**
GEN.	diēī	reī	**-ēī (-eī)**	diērum	rērum	**-ērum**
DAT.	diēī	reī	**-ēī (-eī)**	diēbus	rēbus	**-ēbus**
ACC.	diem	rem	**-em**	diēs	rēs	**-ēs**
ABL.	diē	rē	**-ē**	diēbus	rēbus	**-ēbus**

a. **Diēs** is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. The other nouns of this declension are feminine (except one compound of **diēs**).

b. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined in full. Other nouns of this declension lack some or all of the plural forms.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS

465. The genitive singular endings of the five declensions, we have seen, are as follows:

	II.	III.	IV.	V.
e	**-ī**	**-is**	**-ūs**	**-ēī (eī)**

THE USE OF SYNONYMS

466. Words which may have the same or nearly the me meaning are called Synonyms. Thus, the adjectives *urageous* and *brave* are synonyms. A word which may metimes be a synonym of another, may also have some

uses in which it differs from that other word. Thus *car* sometimes is used to mean *automobile*, but it also has other uses. Often one language will have several synonyms to express an idea for which another language has only one word. In the vocabulary following, **inveniō** is a synonym of **reperiō**, but sometimes **inveniō** means *find accidentally* while **reperiō** may express or suggest the idea *find by seeking*.

ARCH OF TITUS

467. **VOCABULARY**

cīvitās, -tātis, F., state[1]
cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, decide, determine; station
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run
diēs, diēī, M., F., day
equitātus, -ūs, M., cavalry
inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, find
rēs, reī, F., thing, affair

[1] The word *state* as used to translate **cīvitās** means a country or region under one government, such as Spain, Italy, etc.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

constitution current invention

EXERCISES

468. 1. Hic est prīmus diēs annī novī. 2. Multās et pulchrās rēs hodiē in urbe vīdī. 3. Liber quem in viā invēnistī est meus. 4. Equus in viā currēbat quod magnopere territus erat. 5. Pater meus tēctum novum in hōc locō aedificāre cōnstituit. 6. Cīvitās nostra semper lībera fuit et rēgem habēre nōn cupimus. 7. Equitātū praemissō legiōnēs in castrīs eō diē mānsērunt. 8. Hāc rē cognitā omnēs in oppidō terrēbantur. 9. Hōc respōnsō acceptō Caesar bellum gerere statim cōnstituit. 10. Nāvēs nostrae multās nāvēs hostium in proeliō dēlēvērunt. 11. Cūr nōbīscum bellum gerere cōnstituistis?

469. 1. The camp had been in this place for many days (section **233**). 2. We have decided to choose a new commander at once. 3. Our cavalry are brave, and they have good horses. 4. The state of the Helvetians was not large, but the Helvetians often defeated the Germans. 5. On hearing the sound of battle (the sound of battle having been heard), the lieutenant at once sent the legions and the cavalry.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the ending of the genitive singular of the fifth declension? of the fourth declension? 2. What is the difference between the genitive singular of diēs and of rēs? 3. What is the gender of most nouns of the fifth declension? 4. What are synonyms? 5. Give two English words which are synonyms, other than the examples given in the lesson. 6. What is meant by the phrase *sine die*?

FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

470. (1) Irregular comparison of adjectives.
(2) Adjectives with the genitive in **-ĭus.**
(3) The genitive of description.
(4) The ablative of description.
(5) Formation of adverbs.
(6) Comparison of adverbs.
(7) The present participle.
(8) The ablative absolute.
(9) The fifth declension.

471. Define the following English words and give Latin words with which they are connected in derivation:

absent	delusion	implore	ocean
accept	devastate	invalid	proceed
altitude	dictionary	invention	procession
benefit	difficult	lake	relic
brevity	dissimilar	latitude	repel
constitution	efficient	malevolent	response
consular	facility	mode	satisfy
current	gravity	moral	similar
decimal	humility	nominate	vulnerable

472. URBS NOSTRA

For words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary.

Urbs in quā pater meus habitat est in rīpā magnī flūminis. Saepe nāvēs in hōc flūmine videntur, quae ā terrīs externīs vēnērunt. Est portus bonus in quō nāvēs tūtae ā tempestātibus sunt. Saepe hās nāvēs videō, et ipse in terrās externās īre[1] cupiō. Sed pater meus mē expectāre jubet. Is cum mātre meā in Italiā et Hispāniā et Galliā fuit. Ego mox juvenis erō atque tum hās terrās pulchrās et clārās vidēbō.

---

[1] *to go.*

LESSON LXXXI

DEPONENT VERBS

FORMS OF DEPONENT VERBS

473. A deponent verb is one which is passive in form but active in meaning. Its principal parts are passive forms. Deponents have only two stems, the present and the participial.

a. The endings of the present infinitives which are used to indicate the conjugations are therefore as follows:

I.	II.	III.	IV.
-ārī	**-ērī**	**-ī**	**-īrī**

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

474. Deponents of the first and second conjugations are conjugated as follows:

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try.*
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
cōnor	cōnāmur	polliceor	pollicēmur
cōnāris	cōnāminī	pollicēris	pollicēminī
cōnātur	cōnantur	pollicētur	pollicentur

IMPERFECT

cōnābar	cōnābāmur	pollicēbar	pollicēbāmur
cōnābāris	cōnābāminī	pollicēbāris	pollicēbāminī
cōnābātur	cōnābantur	pollicēbātur	pollicēbantur

FUTURE

cōnābor	cōnābimur	pollicēbor	pollicēbimur
cōnāberis	cōnābiminī	pollicēberis	pollicēbiminī
cōnābitur	cōnābuntur	pollicēbitur	pollicēbuntur

PERFECT

cōnātus sum, *etc.*	pollicitus sum, *etc.*

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram, *etc.*	pollicitus eram, *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō, *etc.*	pollicitus erō, *etc.*

INFINITIVES

PRES.	cōnārī	pollicērī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	cōnāns	pollicēns

475. VOCABULARY

cāsus, -ūs, M., accident, occurrence, chance, mischance
colloquium, -ī, N., interview, conference
cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum, try, attempt
igitur, *conj.*, therefore
polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, promise
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, fear

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

case casualty colloquy reverence

EXERCISES

476. 1. Gallī urbem dēfendere cōnātī sunt, sed ā Rōmānīs superātī sunt. 2. Auxilium nostrum pollicēmur, quod amīcī vestrī sumus. 3. Mīles fortis vulnera nōn verētur, et ad omnēs cāsūs parātus est.

4. Rēx Germānōrum ad colloquium invītātus nōn vēnit. Caesar igitur ad eum mīsit nūntium. Tum uterque (*each*) sēcum mīlitēs dūxit ad locum quī dēlēctus erat. Sed mīlitēs

rēgis tēla in (*at*) Rōmānōs jēcērunt. Posteā erat magnum proelium et rēx superātus est. Multī ex ejus exercitū interfectī sunt, et aliī fūgērunt. Hae rēs in librīs Caesaris scrīptae sunt.

477. 1. Why do you not give me the book which you have promised? 2. I have tried to find it, but it has been lost. 3. Therefore I will give you another book today. 4. Our soldiers do not fear the weapons of the Gauls, and they will attack the town bravely. 5. Afterward, they will capture the townspeople, who are trying to defend themselves.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the personal endings of verbs in the passive voice. 2. Give the terminations of the present passive infinitives of the four conjugations. 3. Conjugate **vereor** in the present and the future indicative. 4. Give the case endings of the fifth declension. 5. Give the ending of the genitive singular of each of the five declensions. 5. What is a *casual* acquaintance?

LESSON LXXXII

DEPONENT VERBS (Continued): ABLATIVE WITH *ŪTOR*, ETC.

DEPONENT VERBS (Continued)

478. Deponents of the third conjugation ending in **-or** and those of the fourth conjugation are conjugated as follows:

III.	IV.
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*	**potior, potīrī, potītus sum,** *gain possession of*

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
sequor	sequimur	potior	potīmur
sequeris	sequiminī	potīris	potīminī
sequitur	sequuntur	potītur	potiuntur

IMPERFECT

sequēbar	sequēbāmur	potiēbar	potiēbāmur
sequēbāris	sequēbāminī	potiēbāris	potiēbāminī
sequēbātur	sequēbantur	potiēbātur	potiēbantur

FUTURE

sequar	sequēmur	potiar	potiēmur
sequēris	sequēminī	potiēris	potiēminī
sequētur	sequentur	potiētur	potientur

PERFECT

secūtus sum, *etc.* potītus sum, *etc.*

PAST PERFECT

secūtus eram, *etc.* potītus eram, *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT

secūtus erō, *etc.* potītus erō, *etc.*

INFINITIVES

PRES.	sequī	potīrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	sequēns	potiēns
PAST	secūtus	potītus
FUT.	secūtūrus	potītūrus

THE ABLATIVE WITH *ŪTOR, FRUOR,* ETC.

479. The deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative case.

Gladiō **ūtitur,** *he uses a sword.*
Oppidō **potītī sunt,** *they have gained possession of the town.*

a. Some of these verbs are not used in the exercises of this book, and so their meanings are not given here. But it is convenient to learn the list as a whole for future reference.

480. VOCABULARY

condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, found, establish
līberī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, children
lingua, -ae, F., language
potior, -īrī, potītus sum, gain possession of
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, employ
varius, -a, -um, various

a. The noun **līberī,** *children,* is the same as the masculine plural of the adjective **līber,** *free.* It will be possible to determine from the rest of the sentence whether any form of **līberī** is to be translated by the noun or the adjective.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

linguist sequence useful vary

EXERCISES

481. 1. Hostēs exercitum nostrum quattuor diēs secūtī sunt. Sed posteā victī sunt, et nostrī impedīmentīs eōrum potītī sunt. In eō proeliō Gallī longīs hastīs ūtēbantur et multōs nostrōrum vulnerābant.

2. Post variōs cāsūs patrēs nostrī in hanc terram pervēnērunt. Novās urbēs condidērunt, quae nunc magnae sunt. Tum multī ex aliīs terrīs vēnērunt quī lībertātem habēre cupiēbant. Variīs linguīs ūtēbantur et variōs mōrēs habēbant. Nunc līberī eōrum sunt cīvēs patriae nostrae. Nōs omnēs hanc terram amāmus, quod est terra lībera. In eā est nūllus servus, in eā est nūllus rēx.

482. 1. Sending ahead the baggage (the baggage having been sent ahead), Caesar followed with one legion. 2. The soldier will use his father's sword in battle. 3. Our army had gained possession of many towns in this part of Gaul. 4. After various mischances, the king founded his city in this country (**terra**). 5. The Gauls and the Germans do not use the same language

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **ūtor** in the present and the future indicative. 2. Give a synopsis of **potior** in the third person singular of the indicative. 3. How many principal parts does a deponent verb have? 4. Explain the case of **impedimentīs** in line 2, section **481.** 5. Give the terminations of the present infinitives of deponent verbs in the third and fourth conjugations. 6. What English noun is connected in derivation with **varius?**

LESSON LXXXIII

DEPONENT VERBS (Continued)

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *-IOR*

483. Deponent verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-ior** are conjugated as follows:

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *go out*

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
ēgredior	ēgredimur	ēgrediēbar	ēgrediēbāmur
ēgrederis	ēgrediminī	ēgrediēbāris,	ēgrediēbāminī
ēgreditur	ēgrediuntur	ēgrediēbātur	ēgrediēbantur

FUTURE

Singular	*Plural*
ēgrediar	ēgrediēmur
ēgrediēris	ēgrediēminī
ēgrediētur	ēgredientur

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
ēgressus sum,	ēgressus eram,	ēgressus erō,
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
ēgressī sumus,	ēgressī erāmus,	ēgressī erimus,
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES. ēgredī	PRES. ēgrediēns
	PAST ēgressus
	FUT. ēgressūrus

PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS

484. The past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning, like its other forms. Thus, **cōnātus,** *having tried,* **secūtus,** *having followed,* **ēgressus,** *having gone out.* Deponents have a present active participle, like other verbs: **cōnāns, verēns, sequēns, ēgrediēns.** The participles of **cōnor,** with their meanings, are as follows:

cōnāns, *trying*
cōnātus, *having tried*
cōnātūrus, *about to try*

485. VOCABULARY

armātus, -a, -um, armed
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, go out, depart
hīc, *adv.*, here
postquam, *conj.*, after
reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give back, return
rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*)
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live

a. The word *after,* when a preposition, is in Latin **post**; when a conjunction, it is **postquam.** The difference between the two uses is illustrated by the following sentences. *After the storm, the road was impassable,* and *After the storm was over, the road was impassable.* In the first of these sentences *after* is a preposition; in the second it is a conjunction.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

armada[1] egress riparian vivid

[1] A Spanish word derived from the Latin **armāta.**

EXERCISES

486. 1. Tum cōnsul ex urbe ēgressus est et ad exercitum contendit. 2. Librum tuum lēgī et (eum) mox reddam. 3. Hostēs castra sua in rīpā magnī flūminis posuerant, quod ab urbe nostrā nōn longē aberat. 4. Hīc exercitum nostrum expectābant, et pugnāre cupiēbant. 5. Magnae cōpiae armātae in colle ab lēgātō vīsae sunt. 6. Frāter meus gladiō ūtī cupit. 7. Postquam urbs nostra dēlēta est, aliam terram petīvimus. 8. Hīc novam urbem condidimus, et nunc in pāce vīvimus. 9. Hostēs in nōs impetum iterum nōn facient. 10. Haec (*these things*, see section **239**) ā patribus gentis Rōmānae dicta sunt.

487. 1. The centurion will go out from camp with one cohort. 2. The enemy gave back the gold after they were defeated. 3. We saw the armed forces of the enemy on the wall of the town. 4. My father had a residence here many years. 5. Your friend lives and is happy. 6. To go out; to follow; having gone out; having tried; having feared.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the present and the past participles of **vereor** and **sequor**. 2. Give a synopsis of **ēgredior** in the third person plural of the indicative. 3. What is the difference in meaning between **post** and **postquam?** 4. Give the rule for the object of **ūtor**, etc. 5. Give the principal parts of **vincō** and **vīvō**. 6. What are *riparian* rights?

ROMAN COINS

LESSON LXXXIV

INFINITIVES

THE INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

488. The Latin infinitive has three tenses, the present, the past, and the future. The infinitives of the four conjugations are formed as follows:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	I.	
PRES.	portāre, *to carry*	portārī, *to be carried*
PAST	portāvisse, *to have carried*	portātus esse, *to have been carried*
FUT.	portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry*	portātum īrī, *to be about to be carried*
	II.	
PRES.	monēre	monērī
PAST	monuisse	monitus esse
FUT.	monitūrus esse	monitum īrī
	III.	
PRES.	dūcere	dūcī
PAST	dūxisse	ductus esse
FUT.	ductūrus esse	ductum īrī
PRES.	capere	capī
PAST	cēpisse	captus esse
FUT.	captūrus esse	captum īrī
	IV.	
PRES.	audīre	audīrī
PAST	audīvisse	audītus esse
FUT.	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī

FORMATION OF THE INFINITIVES

489. 1. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the present passive infinitive is formed by changing the final **-e** of the present active infinitive to **-ī** (section **344**). In the third conjugation, both of **-ō** verbs and **-iō** verbs, the termination **-ere** of the active is replaced by **-ī** in the passive.

2. The past active infinitive is formed by adding the termination **-isse** to the perfect stem.

3. The past passive infinitive consists of the past passive participle and **esse.** The future active infinitive consists of the future active participle and **esse.**

4. The form used with **īrī** to make the future passive infinitive always ends in **-um.** It is not a participle.[1] The future passive infinitive is not much used.

THE INFINITIVES OF DEPONENT VERBS

490. The present and past infinitives of deponents are passive in form, the future is active. All are active in meaning. The infinitives of the four model deponents are as follows:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
PRES.	cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	potīrī
PAST	cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

EXERCISES

491. 1. Occupārī; occupāvisse; occupātus esse. 2. Mūnītūrus esse; mūnītus esse; mūnīrī. 3. Pōnī; posuisse; positūrus esse. 4. Jēcisse; dēfendisse; repperisse. 5. Dūcī; dīcī; terrērī. 6. Mittī; mīsisse; missus esse. 7. Vāstārī; timērī; petī; interficī; audīrī. 8. Ductūrus esse; ductum īrī; ductus esse. 9. Vincere; victūrus esse; vincī; victus esse.

[1] This form is called the Supine.

92. 1. To defend; to be defended; to have defended. 2. To hinder; to be hindered; to have been hindered. 3. To be seen; to have invited; to have left. 4. To send; to be sent to send; to be about to be sent. 5. To have given; have increased; to have helped.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. On which stem of the verb is each of the infinitives formed? 2. Point the difference between the past passive and the future active infinitives. Explain the forms of the infinitives of deponent verbs. 4. What is the ination of the perfect active infinitive? 5. How does the present ive infinitive of the third conjugation differ from that of other conjuga- ? 6. From what Latin words is *devastation* derived?

LESSON LXXXV

QUOTATIONS: INDIRECT DISCOURSE

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATIONS

93. 1. A direct quotation is one which repeats the exact ds of the speaker. Thus, *He said, "I will come."*

2. An indirect quotation is one which repeats the thought not the exact words of the original speaker. In English indirect quotation is often introduced by the conjunction . Thus, *He said that he would come.*

a. Sometimes no conjunction is used. Thus, *He said he would come.*

INDIRECT QUOTATIONS IN LATIN

94. In Latin, a simple sentence when used in an indirect tation has its verb in the infinitive and its subject in the ısative. No conjunction is used to introduce indirect tations in Latin.

Dīcit puerum in silvā ambulāre, *he says that the boy is walking in the forest.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

495. The name Indirect Discourse is given to the use of the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect quotations, and also to certain other expressions which are not exactly quotations. In such sentences as *I heard that you had received a letter*, and *Everyone thought that the day would be pleasant*, the clauses introduced by *that* take the same form in Latin as the indirect quotations given above. That is, their verbs will be infinitives and their subjects will stand in the accusative.

Indirect discourse is used with verbs of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing*, and the like.

Crēdō tē librum meum habēre, *I believe (that) you have my book.*

a. A predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in indirect discourse is in the accusative, to agree with the subject.

Arbitrāmur ducem nostrum ***fortem*** **esse,** *we think (that) our leader is brave.*

496. VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive, do
arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum, think
crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, believe, trust
migrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, migrate
praeda, ae, F., booty, spoil
uxor, -ōris, F., wife

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

act arbitrary credible migration

EXERCISES

497. 1. Nūntius dīcit hostēs nunc castra mūnīre. 2. Helvētiī ex fīnibus suīs migrant. 3. Caesar crēdit Helvētiōs

ıs suīs migrāre. 4. Omnis praeda hujus oppidī est 5. Mīlitēs arbitrantur omnem praedam hujus oppidī ım. 6. Barbarī per viās urbis captīvōs agunt. ıus barbarōs per viās urbis captīvōs agere. 8. Im- epistulam ex castrīs ad uxōrem suam mīsit. 9. Le- ı prōvinciā ēgressae in fīnēs hostium quīnque diēbus unt. 10. Caesar arbitrātur hanc legiōnem fortissi- e. 11. Centuriō dīcit mīlitēs collem ascendere.

1. Caesar thinks that the Helvetians are laying waste s (fields) of his allies. 2. Our allies say that their re being laid waste by the Helvetians. 3. We hat the army is defending the town bravely. 4. All the army is led by a brave general. 5. The messen- that our men are defeating the enemy.

SUGGESTED DRILL

ıt is the difference between a direct and an indirect quotation? onjunction is frequently used in English to introduce an indirect 3. What is the rule for the use of the verb and its subject in a tence in an indirect quotation in Latin? 4. With what classes of direct discourse used? 5. What is the case of a predicate noun ve with an infinitive in indirect discourse? 6. What English rived from the present participle of **agō**?

SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

s, M.	decem
tātis, F.	absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus
ohortis, F.	agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
ım, -ī, N.	arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum
ōnsulis, M.	cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum
ī, M., F.	condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
s, -ūs, M.	cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum

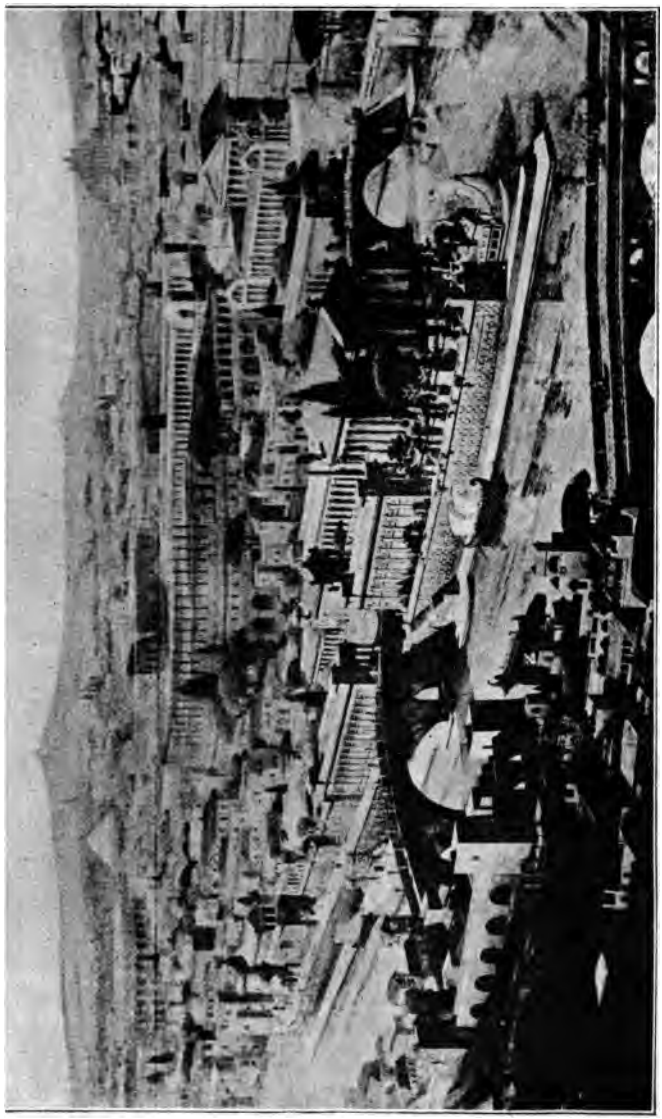
imperātor, -ōris, M.	cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum
līberī, -ōrum, M.	crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
lingua, -ae, F.	currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum
praeda, -ae, F.	dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum
rēs, reī, F.	ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum
respōnsum, -ī, N.	implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
rīpa, -ae, F.	inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
Rōma, -ae, F.	lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum
uxor, -ōris, F.	migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
vulnus, vulneris, N.	polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum
vōx, vōcis, F.	potior, -īrī, potītus sum
armātus, -a, -um	praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
brevis, -e	reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
gravis, -e	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
idōneus, -a, -um	servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
invītus, -a, -um	ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum
tot	vereor, -ērī, veritus sum
varius, -a, -um	vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum

ācriter	hīc	itaque	postquam
bene	igitur	male	

500. BARBARĪ ET PATRĒS NOSTRĪ

For words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary, page 303.

Ōlim in multīs partibus patriae nostrae erant magnae silvae. Per hās silvās ferae bēstiae errābant. Barbarī quoque in hīs silvīs habitābant, et saepe sagittīs animālia necābant. Patrēs nostrī quī in hanc terram vēnērunt cum barbarīs pugnābant et dēnique eōs vīcērunt. Tum barbarī in aliās partēs migrāvērunt, ubi nunc habitant. In multīs locīs illae silvae caesae sunt, et nunc tēcta agricolārum et urbēs et oppida videntur ubi ōlim erant barbarī et ferae bēstiae.



VIEW OF ANCIENT ROME (RECONSTRUCTION)

LESSON LXXXVI

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

501. If the verb in the original or direct statement is in the present tense, the infinitive in indirect discourse will be the present, no matter what is the tense of the word of *saying*. Thus, for the sentence *He said that the enemy were attacking the town* the direct form of the statement would be *The enemy are attacking the town.* Since *are attacking* is present, the present infinitive is required for the indirect quotation.

Dīxit hostēs oppidum oppugnāre, *he said that the enemy were attacking the town.*

502. If the verb in the direct statement is in any tense of past time (imperfect, perfect, or past perfect), the past infinitive will be used in the indirect quotation. If the verb in the direct statement is future, the future infinitive will be used in the indirect quotation. Thus the sentences *He said that the enemy had attacked the town* and *He said that the enemy would attack the town* represent the direct statements *The enemy attacked* (or *have attacked*) *the town* and *The enemy will attack the town.* Hence, in the indirect quotations given above, the past infinitive will be used in the first and the future infinitive in the second.

Dīxit hostēs oppidum oppugnāvisse, *he said that the enemy had attacked the town.*

Dīxit hostēs oppidum oppugnātūrōs esse, *he said that the enemy would attack the town.*

a. With words of *hearing, thinking,* etc., the tense of the infinitive is determined by the direct form of the statement heard or of the thought quoted.

Audīvī eum in urbe *habitāre*, *I heard that he lived in the city.*

AGREEMENT OF PARTICIPLES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

503. In the past passive and in the future active infinitives, the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

Dīxit ūnam cohortem *missam* esse, *he said that one cohort had been sent.*

Dīxit mīlitēs *ventūrōs* esse, *he said that the soldiers would come.*

504. THE INFINITIVES OF SUM

PRES. esse PAST fuisse FUT. futūrus esse

505. VOCABULARY

canis, canis, M., dog

concurrō, -ere, concurrī, concursum, run together

duplex, *gen.* **duplicis,** double, twofold

herī, *adv.*, yesterday

mēnsis, mēnsis (*genitive pl.* **mēnsium** *or* **mēnsum**), M., month

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

canine concur duplicate science

EXERCISES

506. 1. Caesar sciēbat Gallōs magnum exercitum condūxisse. 2. Omnēs arbitrābantur hostēs mox impetum factūrōs esse. 3. Nūntius dīxit magnum numerum Germānōrum ex castrīs ēgressum esse et ad flūmen properāre. 4. Hominēs ex omnibus partibus concurrērunt quod patriam suam dēfendere cupiēbant. 5. Oppidum duplicī mūrō mūnītum erat, et facile dēfendēbātur. 6. Herī audīvimus novum imperātōrem ad exercitum missum esse. 7. Sciēbāmus senātum mox novum imperātōrem missūrum esse. 8. Cum hīs barbarīs bellum sex mēnsēs gessimus. 9. Puer cum cane suō in silvā longē ā vīcō errābat.

507. 1. The man said that his brother would give back the money. 2. We know that you did not send a letter. 3. Caesar says that all men love liberty. 4. The Gauls believed that this legion would follow with the baggage. 5. We have heard that Caesar waged war in Gaul for nine years.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What determines the tense of the infinitive in an indirect statement? 2. What tenses of the direct discourse may be represented by the past infinitive in indirect discourse? 3. What determines the gender, number, and case of the participle of the past passive and the future active infinitives in indirect discourse? 4. Give all the infinitives of **cupiō**. 5. Give some English words which are derived from compounds of **currō**.

LESSON LXXXVII

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

508. The verb **possum,** *I am able* or *I can,* is irregular. It is a compound of **sum** and the adjective **potis,** *able.* The present system in the indicative mood is as follows:

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
possum, *I am able* or *I can*	possumus, *we are able,* etc.
potes, *you are able, you can*	potestis, *you are able,* etc.
potest, *he is able, he can*	possunt, *they are able,* etc.

IMPERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
poteram, *I was able, I could*	poterāmus, *we were able,* etc.
poterās, *you were able,* etc.	poterātis, *you were able,* etc.
poterat, *he was able,* etc.	poterant, *they were able,* etc.

FUTURE

Singular	*Plural*
poterō, *I shall be able*	poterimus, *we shall be able*
poteris, *you will be able*	poteritis, *you will be able*
poterit, *he will be able*	poterunt, *they will be able*

509. VOCABULARY

aciēs, aciēī, F., line of battle
deinde, *adv.*, next
īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up
obses, obsidis, M., hostage
possum, posse, potuī, be able, can
queror, querī, questus sum, complain
simul, *adv.*, at the same time

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

instruct possible simultaneous

EXERCISES

510. 1. Patriam nostram dēfendere possumus et dēfendēmus. 2. Ex illō locō mē audīre nōn poteris. 3. Facile urbem vidēre poteram quod in colle eram. 4. Lēgātus aciem in locō idōneō īnstrūxit et hostēs expectābat. 5. Obsidēs quōs habeō nōn reddam. 6. Rēx dīxit sē obsidēs nōn redditūrum esse. 7. Dux crēdit oppidānōs nōn diū sē dēfendere posse. 8. Multum efficere possunt quod crēdunt sē posse. 9. Cūr sociī nostrī queruntur? 10. Sonum proeliī audīvimus et simul hostēs in colle vīsī sunt. 11. Deinde dux equitātum praemīsit et cum omnibus legiōnibus secūtus est.

511. 1. These legions can easily repulse the enemy. 2. Our friends could not help us. 3. Grain cannot be sent by our allies. 4. You can see the statue, which stands on a hill. 5. After drawing up the line of battle (*abl. abs.*) Labienus will wait for Caesar.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the third person singular of **possum** in the present, imperfect, and future, indicative mood. 2. Conjugate **sum** and **possum** in the future indicative. 3. Explain the gender and number of **redditūrum** in sentence 6, section **510.** 4. Decline **aciēs** in the singular. 5. Explain the use of the infinitive **dēfendere** in sentence 1, section **510** (see section **358**). 6. What is the meaning of *querulous?*

LESSON LXXXVIII

CONJUGATION OF *EŌ*

THE PRESENT SYSTEM OF *EŌ* IN THE INDICATIVE

512. The irregular verb **eō**, *go*, is conjugated in the present system in the indicative as follows:

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
eō	ībam	ībō
īs	ībās	ībis
it	ībat	ībit
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
īmus	ībāmus	ībimus
ītis	ībātis	ībitis
eunt	ībant	ībunt

COMPOUNDS OF *EŌ*

513. There are many compounds of **eō**, such as **exeō**, *go out*, **redeō**, *go back*, **trānseō**, *go across*. They are conjugated like **eō**, with the syllable **ex-**, **red-**, **trāns-**, etc., prefixed. Thus, **exeō**, **exīs**, **exit**, etc.

514. VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M., coming, arrival
aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, attack
eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, go
exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, go out
libenter, *adv.*, willingly, with pleasure
redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, return
trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, cross

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

advent aggressive exit transition

EXERCISES

Exeunt; exībant; exībunt; trānsit; trānsībit. 2. frātre suō ex Hiberniā redībit. 3. Legiōnēs nos- ; in eō locō aggressae sunt. 4. Saepe ex oppidō et in agrīs ambulābāmus. 5. Epistulam tuam ;ī, et nunc sciō tē esse amīcum meum. 6. Flūmen ›n possumus quod nāvēs nōn habēmus. 7. Pater ıum hōc annō trānsībit et urbem Rōmam vidēbit. .ventum Caesaris Germānī in Galliam vēnērunt et s bellum gessērunt. Saepe Gallōs vīcerant et :ōrum eōrum occupāverant. Sed Caesar Germānōs ›erāvit et hī ex ;ssērunt.

The Helvetians ng the river with rces. 2. Caesar ıttack on them many. 3. The ny followed the **uōs**) for many Then the Helve- ked the Romans as a great battle. ıe battle the de- vetians returned m country.

VIEW OF MISENUM

SUGGESTED DRILL

;ate **exeō** in the imperfect and the future indicative. 2. Con- in the present indicative. 3. Conjugate **aggredior** in the ative. 4. Decline **adventus** in the singular. 5. Explain the sentence 5, section **515**. 6. Give two English words which are meaning with **aggredior.**

:iple of *vincō*.

LESSON LXXXIX

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM* AND *EŌ* (Continued)

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF *POSSUM* IN THE INDICATIVE

517. The perfect system of **possum** is as follows:

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
potuī, *I have been able, I could*	potueram, *I had been able*	potuerō, *I shall have been able*
potuistī	potuerās	potueris
potuit	potuerat	potuerit
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
potuimus	potuerāmus	potuerimus
potuistis	potuerātis	potueritis
potuērunt	potuerant	potuerint

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF *EŌ* IN THE INDICATIVE

518. The verb **eō** is conjugated as follows in the perfect system:

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
iī, *I have gone, I went*	ieram, *I had gone*	ierō, *I shall have gone*
īstī *or* iistī	ierās	ieris
iit	ierat	ierit
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
iimus	ierāmus	ierimus
īstis or iistis	ierātis	ieritis
iērunt	ierant	ierint

a. Occasionally forms are found in the perfect system with the stem **īv-**: **īvit, īverat,** etc.

b. The tenses of **possum** and **eō** given above are formed exactly like the same tenses of regular verbs.

INFINITIVES OF *POSSUM* AND *EŌ*

519. The infinitives of **possum** and **eō** are as follows:

PRES.	posse	īre
PAST	potuisse	īsse (iisse)
FUT.	(*lacking*)	itūrus esse

a. The future infinitive of **possum** is lacking.

520. VOCABULARY

ars, artis, -ium, F., art
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out
inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place
metuō, -ere, -uī, fear
sīc, *adv.*, so, thus
situs, -ūs, M., site, location
soror, sorōris, F., sister

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

artist situation sorority

EXERCISES

521. 1. Eō diē legiōnēs decem mīlia passuum iērunt. 2. Quod oppidānī in eō locō sē dēfendere nōn potuerant, in alium locum migrāvērunt. 3. Situs novī oppidī erat pulcher, et omnēs arbitrābantur sē ibi tūtōs esse. 4. Hostēs nōn metuimus quod arma et nāvēs habēmus. 5. Lēgātus cōpiās ex castrīs ēdūxit et aciem īnstrūxit. 6. Inde longum iter fēcimus et in fīnēs hujus gentis pervēnimus. 7. Soror tua ab Italiā eō annō trānsīre nōn potuit. 8. In eā gente artēs bellī semper laudātae sunt. 9. Sīc patrēs nostrī patriam dēfendērunt, sīc nōs eam dēfendēmus.

522. 1. We have often crossed this river by boats (see section **280**). 2. The Gauls had not been able to defend their towns and their lands (fields). 3. My sister has not been able to return, on account of the storm. 4. The enemy did not lead out their forces, because they feared the legions. 5. We praise the arts of peace more than the arts of war.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give a synopsis of **possum** in the second person singular of the indicative. 2. Give a synopsis of **eō** in the first person plural of the indicative. 3. Decline **ars.** 4. Give the ablative singular of **situs.** 5. Give the perfect active infinitive of **ēdūcō.** 6. The verb **ēdūcō** is a compound of **dūcō.** Give some English words which are derived from other compounds of **dūcō.**

LESSON XC

DECLENSION OF *QUĪDAM*

523. The indefinite pronoun or adjective **quīdam,** *a certain, a certain one, a certain man,* is declined as follows:

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam *or* quiddam
GEN.	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quoddam *or* quiddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. The form **quiddam** is used as a pronoun, **quoddam** as an adjective.

b. The forms of **quīdam** are like those of **quī** with **-dam** added, except that the final **-m** of the relative becomes **-n** before **d.**

524. VOCABULARY

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, add
arcus, -ūs, M., bow
avārus, -a, -um, avaricious, covetous
calamitās, -tātis, F., disaster
ferōx, *gen.* **ferōcis,** fierce
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* **quiddam,** a certain
victor, -ōris, M., victor; *as adj.*, victorious

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

addition arch avarice calamity ferocious victor

EXERCISES

525. 1. Quīdam Gallus cum epistulā ad castra hostium missus est. 2. Propter quāsdam injūriās amīcus ejus puerī esse non cupiō. 3. Quīdam ex centuriōnibus in proeliō vulnerātus est. 4. Caesar Labiēnum quendam montem ascendere jusserat. 5. Alia legiō additur, quod hostēs magnās cōpiās habent. 6. Ille barbarus arcum et sagittās gerēbat sed nūllum scūtum habēbat. 7. Illī barbarī ducēs ferōcēs habēbant quī nihil timēbant. 8. Multī quī avārī sunt multam pecūniam nōn habent. 9. Omnēs eum laudant quod victor in bellō fuit. 10. Calamitātēs hōrum hominum sunt multae, sed ipsī semper fortēs sunt.

526. 1. We shall cross the river on a certain day and burn the towns of the enemy. 2. A certain man gave me this book. 3. Certain soldiers who had gone out from the camp could not be found. 4. Our general was victor because he had braver soldiers. 5. The right wing of the enemy had crossed the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Explain the difference between the forms **quiddam** and **quoddam.** 2. Point out the adjective forms of **quīdam** in the sentences of section **525.** 3. Decline **ferōx.** 4. Give the infinitives of **possum** and of **eō.** 5. Explain the case of **Labiēnum** in sentence 4, section **525** (see section **346**). 6. Give an English noun which is connected in derivation with **ferōx.**

SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

527. (1) Deponent verbs.
(2) The ablative with **ūtor,** etc.
(3) Participles of deponent verbs.
(4) The infinitives of the four conjugations.
(5) Indirect discourse.
(6) The conjugation of **possum** and **eō.**
(7) The declension of **quīdam.**

528. Define the following English words and give Latin words with which they are connected in derivation:

act	calamity	ferocious	simultaneous
addition	canine	instruct	situation
advent	casualty	linguist	sorority
aggressive	colloquy	migration	transition
arbitrary	concur	possible	useful
arch	credible	querulous	variety
armada	duplicate	riparian	victor
artist	egress	sequence	vivid
avarice	exit		

529. PICTŪRA

For words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary.

In domiciliō avunculī meī est pictūra quam saepe vīdī. Haec est pictūra magnī proeliī in quō avunculus meus partem habēbat. Tum juvenis erat et validus. Quīdam amīcus avunculī meī in eā pugnā interfectus est, et ipse vulnerātus est. Sed hostēs victī sunt et mox fīnis bellī factus est. Tum avunculus meus ad domicilium patris suī rediit, et ab omnibus laudātus est. Patriam dēfenderat et eī quī in domiciliīs mānserant tūtī erant quod is et aliī fortēs mīlitēs illōs hostēs reppulērunt. Nunc līberī ejus saepe eam pictūram ostendunt et dē factīs fortibus patris suī nārrant.

LESSON XCI

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

530. Most verbs meaning to *please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare* govern the dative.

Equus *tibi* placet, *the horse pleases you.*

531. VOCABULARY

commūnis, -e, common
dēnique, *adv.*, finally
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum (*takes dative*), favor
persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum (*takes dative*), persuade
placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (*takes dative*), please, be agreeable to
pōns, pontis, -ium, M., bridge
vallēs, vallis, -ium, F., valley

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

community persuasion complacent pontoon

EXERCISES

532. 1. Huic puerō facile persuādēbō, quod amīcus meus est. 2. Verba tua frātrī meō nōn placent. 3. Huic hominī favēmus quod semper fortis et honestus fuit. 4. Flūmen erat lātum sed nūllum pontem vidēbāmus. 5. Inter hōs montēs est vallēs quae nōn facile trānsītur. 6. Propter commūne perīculum oppidānī et mīlitēs nunc amīcī sunt. 7. Dēnique collem ascendimus, ex quō tōtum campum vidēre poterāmus.

8. Nāvis nostra ad quandam īnsulam pervēnit, ubi (*where*) barbarī habitābant. Hī ferōcēs erant et impetum in nōs fēcērunt. Arcūs et sagittās habēbant, et paucōs nostrum sagittīs vulnerāvērunt.

533. 1. You will never be able to persuade these men.

2. We do not often favor war, but now our country (**patria**) is in danger. 3. In a certain valley there is a small village. 4. Finally we crossed the river and arrived in a small town. 5. This place was not far from a large forest.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give some verbs which govern the dative. 2. Give a synopsis of **persuādeō** in the third person singular, active voice, indicative mood. 3. Decline **commūnis.** 4. Explain the case of **frātrī** in sentence 2, section **532.** 5. Give the principal parts of **possum** and **eō.** 6. What is the meaning of *dissuade?*

LESSON XCII

DECLENSION OF *QUISQUE*: FORMS OF *COEPĪ*

DECLENSION OF *QUISQUE*

534. The indefinite pronoun **quisque,** *each, each one, each thing,* is declined as follows in the singular:

Masc. and Fem.	*Neuter*
quisque	quidque
cujusque	cujusque
cuique	cuique
quemque	quidque
quōque	quōque

a. As an adjective the nominative is **quisque, quaeque, quodque,** and the other case forms are the same as those of the relative pronoun with the suffix **-que.** The plural is rare.

THE DEFECTIVE VERB *COEPĪ*

535. The verb **coepī,** *I began,* is used only in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. The other tenses are replaced by forms of **incipiō.**

36. VOCABULARY

ō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus,
ıll
ɔī, coepisse, began
idus, -a, -um, cold
hiems, hiemis, F., winter
jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, join, fasten together
nam, *conj.*, for
quisque, quidque, each

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

cadence frigid junction

EXERCISES

37. 1. Fīlium suum quisque monuit. 2. Quemque sēcum
nentum portāre jussērunt. 3. Cuique puerō quī tōtum
n labōrāvit pecūniam dabō. 4. In eō locō erat nūllus
s, sed nāvēs jūnximus et flūmen trānsiimus. 5. Mīles
vulnerātus erat dē murō cecidit. 6. Dēnique hostēs
ɜre coepērunt, et Rōmānī statim eōs secūtī sunt. 7. Haec
, sunt frīgida quod hiemēs sunt longae. 8. Hiemēs
;ae nōbīs nōn placent.
. Tum Helvētiī hominēs ex agrīs convocāvērunt. Nam
ɔter cōnsilia ejus ducis vīdērunt cīvitātem in perīculō
. Patrēs eōrum līberī hominēs fuerant. Numquam fuerat
in cīvitāte Helvētiōrum. Ipsī lībertātem suam dēfendere
itī erant.
38. 1. The Romans began to ascend the hill with all
r forces. 2. The enemy fastened together boats, and
l to cross the river. 3. Each had a sword and a shield,
no one wished to fight. 4. The general ordered each one
repare his weapons and to await the signal.

SUGGESTED DRILL

Give the dative and the accusative of **quisque**. 2. In what tenses
e verb **coepī** used? 3. Explain the case of **quemque** in sentence 2,
on **537**. 4. Decline the interrogative pronoun. 5. Conjugate **possum**
e imperfect and the future indicative. 6. What grammatical term is
ected in derivation with the past participle of **jungō**?

LESSON XCIII

THE VOCATIVE CASE

USE OF THE VOCATIVE CASE

539. In speaking directly to a person, one often uses either the name of the person addressed, or some other noun which refers to him. Thus, *John, where do you live? Boy, what street is this?* In these sentences the words *John* and *boy* denote the persons addressed. A word thus used is in the Vocative case.

FORM OF THE VOCATIVE

540. The vocative has the same form as the nominative, except in the singular number of **-us** nouns of the second declension. These have a special vocative form ending in **-e**. Thus, the vocative singular of **servus** is **serve,** that of **amīcus** is **amīce,** that of **Mārcus** is **Mārce.** The vocative plural is always the same as the nominative plural.

THE VOCATIVE OF ADJECTIVES

541. Adjectives ending in **-us** also have a vocative in **-e** in the masculine singular. Thus, **magne, bone, cāre** are the masculine singular vocative forms of **magnus, bonus,** and **cārus.** All other vocative forms of adjectives are the same as the nominative in the corresponding number and gender.

THE VOCATIVE OF *MEUS*

542. The possessive adjective **meus** has the vocative **mī** in the masculine singular. Its other vocative forms are regular: **Mī amīce,** *my friend.*

POSITION OF THE VOCATIVE

543. A word in the vocative regularly stands after one or more words of the sentence in which it occurs.

Ubi, Mārce, pater tuus est, *Mark, where is your father?*

544. VOCABULARY

aestās, -tātis, F., summer
dēns, dentis, -ium, M., tooth
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (*takes dative*), injure
pāreō, -ēre, -uī (*takes dative*), obey
plānus, -a, -um, level, flat, even
profundus, -a, -um, deep
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hope, hope for

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

dentist innocent plane profound

EXERCISES

545. 1. Cūr, serve, dominus tuus tē saepe accūsat? 2. Cohortēs, Labiēne, in perīculō sunt et auxilium postulant. 3. Epistulam tuam, mī amīce, hodiē accēpī. 4. Cūr, mī frāter, patrī nōn pāruistī? 5. In hīs īnsulīs sunt aestātēs longae et hiemēs brevēs. 6. Mare profundum patriam nostram cingit, et nōs tūtōs esse semper arbitrātī sumus. 7. Nova urbs in locō plānō condita est, sed montēs nōn longē absunt. 8. Magna vīs flūminis pontī nocuit et trānsīre nōn possumus. 9. Erat magna calamitās quod mīlitēs imperātōrī nōn pāruērunt. 10. Hoc animal ferōx magnōs dentēs habet. 11. Omnēs spērant, pācem mox futūram esse, sed ad bellum parātī sunt.

546. 1. Marcus, where is your brother? 2. My friend, you are censured by many because you do not work. 3. Boys, why did you not come yesterday? 4. The storm injured the trees which stand on that hill. 5. The boy obeyed his father and remained on the ship.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the vocative singular of **dominus** and of **Gallus.** 2. What is the vocative of the words meaning *my father?* 3. What is the position of the vocative? 4. Explain the case of **pontī** in sentence 8, section **545.** 5. Give the nominative plural of **vīs.** 6. What English noun is connected in derivation with **dēns?**

AMPHITHEATER OF POMPEII

LESSON XCIV

THE IMPERATIVE

USE OF THE IMPERATIVE

547. The Imperative mood is used to express comman Thus, *Close the door; Wait till I come.* The verbs *close* ε *wait* are in the imperative mood.

THE IMPERATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

The present active imperative of regular verbs of the f conjugations in Latin is as follows:

	I.		II.
Sing.	portā, *carry* (said to one person)		monē
Plur.	portāte, *carry* (said to more than one)		monēt
	III.		IV.
Sing.	mitte	cape	audī
Plur.	mittite	capite	audīte

a. The verbs **dīcō, dūcō,** and **faciō** have the irregular forms **dīc, dūc,** and **fac** in the singular of the present active imperative. In the plural they are regular.

b. The verb **dō** differs from other first conjugation verbs in that the **a** is short in the plural imperative **date.** The singular is regular.

c. The Latin verb has also a future imperative which is not often used. Its forms, and also those of the present passive imperative, are postponed till a later time.

THE IMPERATIVE OF *EŌ*

548. The imperatives of **eō** are **ī** (*singular*), and **īte** (*plural*). Compounds of **eō** form their imperatives like the simple verb. Thus **trānsī, trānsīte,** etc.

549. VOCABULARY

ingēns, *gen.*, **ingentis,** huge, very large
morior, morī, mortuus sum, die
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next, last
resistō, -sistere, -stitī (*takes dative*), resist
salūs, salūtis, F., safety
ūnā, *adv.*, at the same time, together, along (with)
ventus, -ī, M., wind

a. The adjective **proximus** when referring to time is sometimes translated *next* and sometimes *last.* The meaning of the verb of the sentence will make it possible to decide whether *next* or *last* should be used in translating.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

immortal approximate resistance salutary

EXERCISES

550. 1. Statim, puer, illōs hominēs monē. 2. In hōc vīcō breve tempus manē. 3. Castra, mīlitēs, mūnīte et omnia parāte. 4. Salūtem vestram, mīlitēs, ūnā cum tēctīs urbis et

vītā cīvium dēfendite. 5. Omnibus cōpiīs hostium resistēmus et salūtem nostram dēfendēmus. 6. Ingentia saxa dē montibus in flūmen cecidērunt. 7. Caesar dīcit ducem Helvētiōrum eō tempore mortuum esse. 8. Propter magnōs ventōs nāvēs nostrae lacum trānsīre nōn poterant. 9. Proximō annō Ōceanum trānsībimus et eās urbēs clārās vidēbimus. 10. Eum Gallum quī in castrīs repertus est ad imperātōrem nostrum dūc. 11. Proximō diē soror tua in urbem pervēnit.

551. 1. Romans, defend your liberty and your native country. 2. Soldiers, advance and make an attack on the right wing of the enemy. 3. Boy, send this letter to (**ad**) my brother. 4. Marcus, give me the book which you have found. 5. The cavalry crossed the river together with the legion.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the present active imperatives of **laudō, habeō,** and **pōnō.** 2. Give the present imperative of **exeō.** 3. Conjugate **resistō** in the perfect indicative active. 4. Explain the position of **puer** in sentence 1, section **550.** 5. Decline **quisque.** 6. What Latin word can you trace in *ventilate?*

LESSON XCV

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION: DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

552. Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, be absent,* and the like take the Ablative of Separation, often with the preposition **ab** or **ex.**

Hī montēs Galliam ab *Hispāniā* dīvidunt, *these mountains separate Gaul from Spain.*

a. A few examples of this use have occurred in previous exercises.

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

553. Verbs compounded with **ante, ob, prae,** and **sub** frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case.[1]

***Legiōnī* praeest,** *he is in command of the legion.*

a. If the simple verb from which the compound is formed is a transitive verb, the compound verb may take both the accusative and the dative.

***Labiēnum castrīs* praefēcit,** *he placed Labienus in command of the camp.*

554. VOCABULARY

acūtus, -a, -um, sharp
ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, take away, rescue
fertilis, -e, fertile
neque, *conj.*, nor, and . . . not
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, place in command of, place in charge of
praesum, -esse, -fuī, be in command of, be in charge of
rēgīna, -ae, F., queen

a. The use of **neque** meaning *and . . . not* is shown in such a sentence as **Hic mīles fortis est, neque hostes timet,** *this soldier is brave, and he does not fear the enemy.*

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

acute fertility

EXERCISES

555. 1. Magna flūmina illōs agrōs fertilēs Galliae ā fīnibus nostrīs dīvidunt. 2. Tum Labiēnus centuriōnem hīs cohortibus praefēcit et eum hostēs sequī iussit. 3. Rēgīna Hispāniae saepe in eā magnā urbe Galliae fuit. 4. Lēgātus quī tum exercituī praeerat numquam anteā in eā prōvinciā

[1] Other prepositions whose compounds sometimes take the dative are **ad, circum, con, in, inter, post, prō, super.** If the compounds of **ad** and **in** denote motion, the accusative with **ad** or **in** is regularly used.

fuerat. 5. Canem tuum timeō quod dentēs acūtōs habet. 6. Ille vir fortis frātrem suum ex perīculō ēripuit, sed ipse interfectus est. 7. In hōc locō fēlīx sum, neque mare iterum trānsīre cupiō. 8. Flūmen trānsīte et illam partem exercitūs hostium circumvenīte. 9. Illam epistulam, mea fīlia, quam in manū tenēs, mihi dā. 10. Caesar eī partī Galliae praefectus est quam id flūmen ab Italiā dīvidit.

556. 1. The centurion who was in command of this legion was wounded. 2. The Roman people placed Caesar in charge of this province. 3. The lake and the river separate the Helvetians from the Roman province. 4. Close the gates of the town, soldiers, and defend yourselves bravely. 5. We cannot resist the legions longer.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Explain the case of **finibus** in sentence 1, section **555.** 2. Explain the case of **exercituī** in sentence 4, section **555.** 3. Conjugate **praesum** in the present and the perfect indicative. 4. Give the present active imperatives of **dīcō, dūco,** and **faciō,** singular and plural. 5. What is the vocative of **Labiēnus?** 6. Find on a map of Canada a city the name of which means *queen.*

EIGHTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

557. VOCABULARY REVIEW

aciēs, -ēī, F.
adventus, -ūs, M.
aestās, -tātis, F.
arcus, -ūs, M.
ars, artis, F.
calamitās, -tātis, F.
canis, canis, M.
dēns, dentis, M.
hiems, hiemis, F.
mēnsis, mēnsis, M.
proximus, -a, -um
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quod-)
quisque, quidque
addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus
coepī, coepisse, coeptum
concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum
eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum
ēripiō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptum

obses, obsidis, M.	exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum
pōns, pontis, M.	faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum
rēgīna, -ae, F.	īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum
salūs, salūtis, F.	jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum
situs, sitūs, M.	metuō, -ere, -uī
soror, sorōris, F.	morior, morī, mortuus sum
vallēs, vallis, F.	noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
ventus, -ī, M.	pāreō, -ēre, -uī
victor, -ōris, M.	persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum
acūtus, -a, -um	placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
avārus, -a, -um	possum, posse, potuī
commūnis, -e	praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
duplex, *gen.* duplicis	praesum, -esse, -fuī
ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis	queror, querī, questus sum
fertilis, -e	redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum
frīgidus, -a, -um	resistō, -ere, restitī, restitūrus
ingēns, *gen.* ingentis	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum
plānus, -a, -um	spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
profundus, -a, -um	trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum

deinde	inde	simul	nam
dēnique	libenter	ūnā	neque
herī	sīc		

558. **TEMPESTĀS**

For words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary.

Herī magna tempestās in lacū erat. Flūctūs altōs ex lītore[1] vidēbāmus, et sonum eōrum audiēbāmus. Quattuor nāvēs āmissae sunt et aliae erant magnō in perīculō. Amīcus frātris meī in ūnā hārum nāvium erat quae tum lacum trānsībant. Omnēs quī in nāve erant magnopere terrēbantur. Sed hic amīcus frātris meī nōn timēbat, quod saepe in marī fuerat et majōrēs tempestātēs vīderat. Dēnique ea nāvis in portum sine dētrīmentō pervēnit.

[1] The nominative is lītus.

NOTE — *Some teachers may find it desirable to end the work of the first year at this point, postponing lessons XCVI-CV until the beginning of the second year. The amount of work to be done must be determined by the age and degree of advancement of the pupils.*

LESSON XCVI

SEMI-DEPONENTS: THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

559. There are four verbs which are deponent in the perfect system, but which have active forms in the present system. Their principal parts are as follows:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, trust

a. There are a few compounds of **fīdō** which are also semi-deponents.

560. The synopsis of **audeō** in the first person singular of the indicative is as follows:

PRES.	audeō	PERF.	ausus sum
IMPF.	audēbam	P. PERF.	ausus eram
FUT.	audēbō	F. PERF.	ausus erō

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

561. A noun or pronoun in the ablative case is sometimes used to express cause.

Hostēs timōre fugere coepērunt, *the enemy began to flee on account of fear.*

Dīligentiā nostrā Gallī nihil effēcērunt, *the Gauls accomplished nothing because of our watchfulness.*

a. Sometimes a preposition (**ab, dē,** or **ex**) is used with the ablative of cause.

b. In translating the ablative of cause the phrases *on account of* and *because of* are sometimes used as above, and sometimes the prepositions *from, by, with,* and *in.*

562. VOCABULARY

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare

corōna, -ae, F., garland, crown

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, (*takes dative*), trust

crūdēlitās, -tātis, F., cruelty

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice, be glad

dīligentia, -ae, F., diligence, watchfulness

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

confident coronet diligent

EXERCISES

563. 1. Nōstrī timōre in castrīs tum manēbant. 2. Crūdēlitāte ejus centuriōnis omnēs īrātī sunt. 3. Dīligentiā nostrā hostēs impetum facere nōn ausī sunt. 4. Ea legiō quam Caesar tum in proelium dūxit semper eī cōnfīdēbat. 5. Hī mīlitēs fugere nōn solitī erant, sed eō diē territī sunt. 6. Omnēs gaudēbant quod crēdidērunt sē mox ad tēcta sua reditūrōs esse. 7. Ducem sapientem habēmus, cui cōnfīdimus. 8. Lēgātus quī nāvibus praeerat omnēs prōcēdere jussit. 9. Omnibus cōpiīs ex castrīs ēductīs Labiēnus iter in fīnēs hostium facere coepit. 10. Meum respōnsum erit breve, neque tibi placēbit. 11. Imperātōrēs Rōmānī interdum mīlitibus fortibus corōnās dedērunt.

564. 1. Because of the fear of the soldiers, the army remained in camp. 2. Nothing will be accomplished by us because of the watchfulness of the enemy. 3. No one dared to resist these men. 4. We are not accustomed to give hostages. 5. You have not been honorable, and I cannot

trust you now. 6. They rejoice; they have rejoiced; they will rejoice; they had rejoiced.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the four semi-deponents from section **559**. 2. Give a synopsis of **gaudeō** in the first person singular of the indicative. 3. What English prepositions or phrases are used in translating the ablative of cause? 4. Give the rule for the ablative of separation. 5. Explain the case of **nāvibus** in sentence 8, section **563**. 6. What is the name of the ceremony at which the crown is placed on the head of a king or queen?

LESSON XCVII

CONJUGATION OF *FERŌ*

565. The verb **ferō,** *bear, carry,* is irregular. Its principal parts are **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.** The irregularities of the indicative are found only in the present tense, the imperfect and the future being conjugated exactly like the corresponding tenses of **dūcō.** The perfect system is formed like that of regular verbs.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Active		*Passive*	
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

INFINITIVES

	Active	*Passive*
PRES.	ferre	ferrī
PAST	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

IMPERATIVE ACTIVE		PARTICIPLES	
SING.	fer	PRES.	ferēns
PLUR.	ferte	PAST	lātus
		FUT. ACT.	lātūrus

566. VOCABULARY

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring together, collect
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, bring, endure
flōs, flōris, M., flower
gaudium, -ī, N., joy
īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (*takes dative and accusative*), bring upon, cause; **bellum īnferre,** make war on
opus, operis, N., work
portus -ūs, M., harbor

a. The verb **īnferō** is often used in such expressions as **bellum īnferre,** *to make war on,* **injūriās īnferre,** *to inflict injuries upon,* etc. In these expressions the words **bellum, injūriās,** etc., stand in the accusative as direct objects, and the word denoting the persons on whom war is made or injuries inflicted stands in the dative.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

conference floral inference operation port

EXERCISES

567. 1. Mox Labiēnus auxilium tulit, et hostēs repulsī sunt. 2. Mīlitēs quī opus cōnfēcerant aliās cohortēs expectābant. 3. Helvētiī in ūnum locum impedīmenta cōnferēbant. 4. Magnum gaudium in urbe erat quod legiō pervēnerat. 5. Nostrae nāvēs in portum pervēnērunt, sed ūna ex nāvibus sociōrum nostrōrum āmissa est. 6. In hīs montibus flōrēs pulcherrimī aestāte videntur.

7. Gallī anteā Rōmānīs bellum intulerant et exercitum eōrum vīcerant. Lēgātus quī legiōnēs dūcēbat interfectus est. Sed posteā eīdem Gallī ā Caesare superātī sunt. Hāc victōriā audītā Rōmānī magnopere gaudēbant.

568. 1. Our towns are in great danger, but the Romans will bring aid. 2. The work which we have completed has been seen by many. 3. They were collecting the arms from all parts of the town. 4. There are a few ships in the harbor. 5. I saw this beautiful flower in my brother's garden.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give a synopsis of **ferō** in the third person singular, active and passive, indicative mood. 2. Give all the infinitives of **ferō**, active and passive. 3. Conjugate **cŏnferō** in the present indicative active. 4. Explain the meaning of the English word *confer*.

LESSON XCVIII

DECLENSION OF *ALIQUIS*: ABLATIVE OF MANNER

THE DECLENSION OF *ALIQUIS*

569. The indefinite pronoun and adjective **aliquis,** *someone, something, some,* is declined as follows:

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
		Singular	
NOM.	aliquis *or* aliquī	aliqua	aliquid *or* aliquod
GEN.	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid *or* aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
		Plural	
NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. The form **aliquid** is used only as a pronoun.

THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

570. The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum,** is used to express manner.

Magnā *virtūte* (or **magnā cum *virtūte***) **pugnant,** *they fight with great courage.*

a. In this and similar constructions the preposition **cum** often stands between the noun and a modifying adjective, as in the example above. Other prepositions also may sometimes stand between their objects and an adjective.

571. VOCABULARY

aliquis *or* **aliquī, aliqua, aliquid** *or* **aliquod,** someone, something, some
celeritās, -tātis, F., speed
committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, unite, undertake; **proelium committere,** begin battle
conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī -ventum, assemble
cūra, -ae, F., care
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe; ought
fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, adjoining

a. When **dēbeō** has a noun or pronoun as direct object, it means *owe.* When it has a complementary infinitive, it means *ought.*

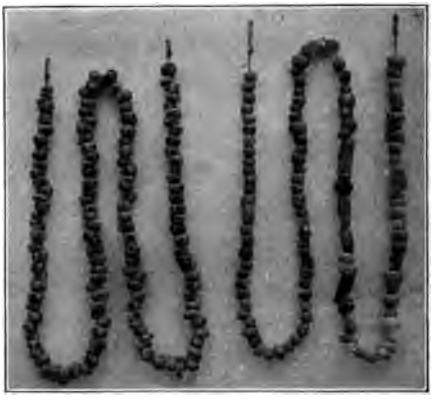
RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

celerity commission convention accurate debit

EXERCISES

572. 1. Epistulam tuam magnā cum cūrā lēgī, sed dē hāc rē nihil dīcere possum. 2. Numquam huic hominī pecūniam dēbuī, neque eī pecūniam dabō. 3. Omnēs quī sonum tubae audīvērunt magnā (cum) celeritāte convenīre dēbent. 4. Aliquis dīxit exercitum nostrum superātum esse et hostēs appropinquāre. 5. Oppidānī portās clausērunt quod barbarī in locīs fīnitimīs vīsī erant. 6. Lēgātus statim proelium commīsit et sinistrum cornū Gallōrum reppulit. 7. Quod impetum nostrum ferre nōn poterant, hostēs magnā celeritāte fugere coepērunt. 8. Cūr illī parvae cīvitātī bellum intulistī? 9. Opere cōnfectō puerī ex agrīs rediērunt et pecūnia eīs data est. 10. Nōn omnia quae audīvī tibi dīcere audeō.

573. 1. Someone has given my brother a large number of books. 2. We crossed the river with great courage and drove back the enemy. 3. The general will send someone to the town with a letter. 4. Where did you find so many flowers? 5. The boats have been built with great care, and they are able to face (bear) the storms.



ROMAN BEADS

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the feminine nominative singular of **aliquis.** 2. What is the feminine nominative singular of the relative pronoun? 3. Explain the case of **celerītāte** in sentence 3, section **572.** 4. Explain the position of **cum** in sentence 1, section **572.** 5. Give the principal parts of **conveniō.** 6. What English verb is derived from **conveniō?**

LESSON XCIX

CARDINAL NUMERALS: DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

CARDINAL NUMERALS

574. The numerals used in counting or in telling how many persons or objects are meant are called Cardinal Numerals. The Latin cardinal numerals from one to twenty are as follows:

ūnus, -a, -um, one	**ūndecim,** eleven
duo, duae, duo, two	**duodecim,** twelve
trēs, tria, three	**tredecim,** thirteen
quattuor, four	**quattuordecim,** fourteen
quīnque, five	**quīndecim,** fifteen
sex, six	**sēdecim,** sixteen
septem, seven	**septendecim,** seventeen
octō, eight	**duodēvīgintī,** eighteen
novem, nine	**ūndēvīgintī,** nineteen
decem, ten	**vīgintī,** twenty

POSITION OF NUMERALS

575. A numeral is commonly placed before the word it modifies, unless it is made specially emphatic.

DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

576. The numerals **duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
duōs *or* duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

a. With the exception of **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs** the numerals given above are not declined. The declension

of **ūnus** has already been explained (section **426**). The word **trēs** is declined like the plural of **omnis.**

577. VOCABULARY

cīvīlis, -e, civil
cōnfiteor, -ērī, cōnfessus sum, confess
dolor, dolōris, M., sorrow, suffering
nisi, *conj.*, unless, if not
lacrima, -ae, F., tear
pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (*a compound of* **eō**), perish
stultitia, -ae, F., folly

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

civilian confession dolorous lachrymal

EXERCISES

578. Bellum cīvīle in patriā nostrā quattuor annōs gestum est. In eō bellō multa mīlia hominum fortium periērunt. Multa oppida incēnsa sunt et fertilēs agrī ab exercitibus vāstātī sunt. Id bellum erat causa lacrimārum et dolōrum per eōs annōs et pāce factā magnum gaudium erat. Spērāmus bellum numquam iterum in hāc terrā futūrum esse. Sed pācem habēre nōn poterimus nisi cīvēs sapientēs erunt. Stultitia saepe fert maxima perīcula, et eī quī malum cōnsilium dant interdum cīvitātī plūs nocent quam eī quī cōnfitentur sē esse hostēs.

579. 1. We remained fifteen days in the town in which you saw us. 2. The farmer has bought two horses. 3. There are three men in the army who came from this town. 4. Someone has said that this is the most beautiful city in our state. 5. The boat cannot advance with great speed on account of the high waves.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline **ūnus.** 2. Decline together **trēs frātrēs.** 3. Decline together **duo puerī.** 4. Explain the case of **hominum** in line 2, section **578** (see section **391** *a*). 5. Give the passive infinitives of **ferō.** 6. What is a *duel?*

LESSON C

CARDINAL NUMERALS (Continued): PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

CARDINAL NUMERALS (Continued)

580. The cardinal numerals from twenty to one hundred are as follows:

vīgintī ūnus (ūnus et vīgintī)	twenty-one
vīgintī duo (duo et vīgintī), *etc.*	twenty-two
trīgintā	thirty
quadrāgintā	forty
quīnquāgintā	fifty
sexāgintā	sixty
septuāgintā	seventy
octōgintā	eighty
nōnāgintā	ninety
centum	one hundred

a. Compound numbers with 8 or 9 (28, 29, 38, 39, etc.) are regularly expressed as *two from thirty, one from thirty,* etc. Thus **duodētrīgintā, ūndētrīgintā,** etc.

b. Additional cardinals are given in section **636.**

THE PREDICATE NOMINATIVE WITH CERTAIN PASSIVE VERBS

581. The passive forms of verbs meaning to *name, call, appoint, choose, elect,* and the like may take a predicate noun or adjective in the same case as the subject.

Caesar *cōnsul* creātus est, *Caesar was elected consul.*

a. In the active these verbs take two accusatives, one telling who is named, called, elected, etc., and the other telling the name by which he is called or the position or office to which he is chosen.

***Helvētiōs Gallōs* appellāmus,** *we call the Helvetians Gauls.*
Tē *ducem* dēlēgērunt, *they have chosen you leader.*

582. VOCABULARY

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, elect
dictātor, -ōris, M., dictator
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rout, put to flight
quamquam, *conj.*, although
spēs, speī, F., hope
vacuus, -a, -um, vacant, empty

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

appellation create dictatorial vacuity

EXERCISES

583. 1. Eō annō Caesar cōnsul creātus est. 2. Hic rēx ā populō Rōmānō amīcus appellātus erat, sed posteā sociīs Rōmānōrum bellum intulit. 3. Propter magnum perīculum patrēs nostrī hunc virum dictātōrem creāvērunt. 4. Dictātor maiōrem potentiam quam cōnsul habēbat. 5. Tum castra vacua erant quod omnēs mīlitēs hostēs sequēbantur. 6. Equitātus mox fugātus est, neque hostibus iterum resistere audēbat. 7. Magnam spem victōriae habēbāmus, quamquam hostēs fortēs esse sciēbāmus. 8. Cum tribus amīcīs ex urbe excessī, et longum iter fēcimus. 9. Tum bellum in duōbus locīs ab eōdem rēge gerēbātur. 10. Quis, puer, est hic tuus amīcus novus?

584. 1. Labienus was never elected consul. 2. This new city which we have founded will be called Rome. 3. This statue has been here a hundred years. 4. We cannot be in two places at the same time. 5. We have waited twenty days, but you have done nothing.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. How are the compound numbers with 8 and 9 (28, 29, 38, 39, etc.) usually expressed? 2. Give the Latin numerals for five, fifteen, and fifty. 3. From what is *century* derived? 4. Give the Latin cardinal numerals from one to twenty. 5. Decline **duo** and **trēs**. 6. What is an *octogenarian?*

NINETEENTH REVIEW LESSON

REVIEW TOPICS

585. (1) The dative with special verbs.
(2) Declension of **quisque.**
(3) Conjugation of **coepī.**
(4) The vocative.
(5) The imperative.
(6) The ablative of separation.
(7) The dative with compounds.
(8) Semi-deponents.
(9) The ablative of cause.
(10) The conjugation of **ferō.**
(11) The declension of **aliquis.**
(12) The ablative of manner.
(13) Cardinal numerals.

586. Define the following English words and give Latin words with which they are connected in derivation:

accurate	confer	favor	persuade
acute	confession	fertile	persuasion
appellation	confident	floral	plane
approximate	convene	frigid	port
cadence	coronet	immortal	profound
celerity	create	infer	resist
civilian	debit	innocent	salutary
commission	dentist	junction	stultify
community	dictator	lachrymal	vacuity
complacent	dolorous	operation	valley

587. OPPIDUM IN QUŌ AMĪCUS MEUS HABITAT

For words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary.

Amīcum habeō quī in parvō oppidō habitat. Flūmen quod ponte trānsītur id oppidum in duās partēs dīvidit. Est templum pulchrum in eā parte oppidī in quā pater amīcī

meī domicilium habet. Multī ex aliīs oppidīs et urbibus in hoc oppidum veniunt quod id templum vidēre cupiunt. Ego mox hunc amīcum vīsam, et id templum clārum vidēbō. Montēs altī ab eō oppidō nōn longē absunt, et hōs quoque vidēre cupiō. In urbe magnā habitō, itaque numquam montēs vīdī.

LESSON CI

CONJUGATION OF *FIŌ*

588. The verb **fīō,** *become* or *be made,* is used as the passive of **faciō** in the present system. The perfect system of **faciō** in the passive is regularly formed with the past participle **factus** and the forms of **sum.** The endings of fīō are those of the active voice.

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
fīō, *I am made, I become*	fīēbam, *I was made, I became*	fīam, *I shall be made, I shall become*
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs
fit	fīēbat	fīet
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
——[1]	fīēbāmus	fīēmus
——	fīēbātis	fīētis
fīunt	fīēbant	fīent

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVES	
SING.	fī	PRES.	fierī
PLUR.	fīte	IMP.	factus esse
		FUT.	factum īrī

[1] The first and second persons plural are lacking in the present tense.

a. In this verb the vowel ī is long before another vowel throughout the indicative.

b. Like the verbs mentioned in section **581, fīō** may have a predicate noun or adjective in the same case as the subject.

Frāter tuus *centuriō* factus est, *your brother has been made centurion.*

589. VOCABULARY

bōs, bovis,[1] M. F., ox, cow; *pl.*, cattle, oxen
externus, -a, -um, foreign
fīō, fierī, factus sum, become, be made
intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within
quotannīs, *adv.*, every year, yearly
rebellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rebel
voluntās, -tātis, F., wish

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

bovine external rebellion voluntary

EXERCISES

590. 1. Quīdam Gallus fit dux equitātūs. 2. Nihil hōc tempore fierī potest, quod nūntius nōndum rediit. 3. Voluntās tua omnibus cognita est sed multī nōn probant. 4. Hī barbarī exercitum quotannīs ē fīnibus ēdūcunt et fīnitimīs (*neighbors*) suīs bellum īnferunt. 5. Hostēs quī intrā silvam erant vidēre nōn poteram. 6. Hostēs externōs nōn timēmus, sed hostēs patriae nostrae inter nōs invenīrī possunt. 7. In hīs lātīs vallibus multī equī et bovēs videntur. 8. Agricolae quī hīc domicilia habent fēlīcēs sunt. 9. Tum Gallī contrā Rōmānōs rebellāvērunt quī anteā eōs superāverant. 10. Exercitū fugātō dux hostium captus est.

591. 1. The woman is made happy because her son has returned safe from a foreign land. 2. This boy, whose

[1] The noun **bōs** has certain irregular forms in the plural, but these are not used in the exercises of this book. They may be found in section **624,** (3) of the Appendix.

mother lives in Spain, crosses the ocean every year. 3. After this war Caesar was made dictator. 4. The enemy drove all the cattle from the fields. 5. Although his life was short, he will always be praised.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the meaning of **fīō**? 2. Give a synopsis of **fīō** in the third person singular, indicative mood. 3. What irregularity in the use of long vowels appears in the forms of **fīō**? 4. Give the rule for the case of nouns with the passive of verbs of *naming, calling*, etc. (**581**). 5. Explain the constructions used with the active forms of these verbs. 6. In what two different ways is *rebel* pronounced? What difference in meaning is indicated by the difference in pronunciation?

LESSON CII

ORDINAL NUMERALS: QUESTIONS

ORDINAL NUMERALS

592. Ordinal numerals are used to number objects in order, as in a row or series, as *first, second, third*, etc. The first twenty Latin ordinals are as follows:

prīmus	ūndecimus
secundus	duodecimus
tertius	tertius decimus
quārtus	quārtus decimus
quīntus	quīntus decimus
sextus	sextus decimus
septimus	septimus decimus
octāvus	duodēvīcēsimus
nōnus	ūndēvīcēsimus
decimus	vīcēsimus

a. The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Thus, **prīmus, prīma, prīmum,** etc. Compound ordinals, such as **tertius decimus,** have both parts declined.

QUESTIONS WITH *-NE* AND *NŌNNE*

593. 1. The Latin equivalent of an English question requiring the answer "yes" or "no," but not indicating which answer is expected, may have the enclitic **-ne** added to the first word.

Rediitne fīlius tuus, *has your son returned?*

2. A question which implies that the answer "yes" ought to be given is introduced by **nōnne.**

Nōnne fīlius tuus rediit, *has not your son returned?*

594. VOCABULARY

cibus, -ī, M., food
dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, dismiss
expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out
fidēlis, -e, faithful
ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, enter
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary
tyrannus, -ī, M., tyrant

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

expel fidelity necessarily tyrannical
expulsion

EXERCISES

595. 1. Habetne fīlius tuus in scholā prīmum locum? 2. Tertiō diē nūntius quī dīmissus erat rediit. 3. Nōnne is tyrannus ex urbe expulsus est? 4. Vīditne dux hostium castra quae nostrī in colle posuerant? 5. Illa urbs decimō annō capta est, et victōrēs tum in patriam suam rediērunt. 6. Nōnne saepe audīvistī patrēs nostrōs fuisse mīlitēs fortēs? 7. Imperātor hostium cum omnī exercitū urbem ingressus est. 8. Dēnique repperī hunc virum esse amīcum fidēlem. 9. Bellum necessārium erat quod sciēbāmus lībertātem nostram in perīculō esse. 10. Hostēs cibum reperīre nōn poterant, et fīnis bellī factus est.

596. 1. The first city which we entered was situated (placed) in a valley. 2. I have brought three books, but I cannot find the fourth. 3. The consul was called a tyrant by his enemies (**inimīcus**). 4. Do you not think that these soldiers are faithful? 5. Is your brother in the town in which your father lives?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the difference in use between cardinal and ordinal numerals? 2. How are ordinals declined? 3. What is the difference between questions with **-ne** and with **nōnne?** 4. Conjugate **ingredior** in the present indicative. 5. Give the infinitives (active) of **faciō,** and the infinitives of **fīō.** 6. What is a *sextette?*

LESSON CIII

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ*

597. The verb **volō,** *wish, be willing,* is irregular. Its principal parts are **volō, velle, voluī.** The irregularities in the indicative of this verb are found only in the present as we saw was also true in the case of the verb **ferō** (section **565**). The other forms are like those of a regular verb of the third conjugation.

The present indicative, the present participle, and the infinitives are as follows:

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Singular	*Plural*
volō	volumus
vīs	vultis
vult	volunt

PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVES
volēns	PRES. velle
	PAST voluisse

a. This verb has no imperative.

598. VOCABULARY

contentus, -a, -um, satisfied, contented
cotīdiē, *adv.*, every day, daily
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, descend
senātus, -ūs, M., senate
sōl, sōlis, M., sun
vīnum, -ī, M., wine
volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

contentment descent senatorial solar volition

EXERCISES

599. 1. Senātus Caesarem in Hispāniam mittere volēbat. 2. Haec gēns dē montibus dēscendit in quibus anteā habitāverat. 3. Cotīdiē epistulae dē hīs rēbus ad senātum mittuntur. 4. Eī quī fortissimī Gallōrum erant vīnō nōn ūtēbantur. 5. Diē sōl, nocte lūna et stellae nōbīs lūcem dant. 6. Sine amīcīs contentī esse nōn possumus. 7. Sī exercitus noster fortis et fidēlis est, patria est tūta ab (*from*) omnibus hostibus. 8. Nōnne illās clārās urbēs Hispāniae et Galliae vidēre saepe voluistis? 9. Propter tempestātēs nautae hodiē in portū manēre volunt. 10. Vult; volet, voluerat; vīs; voluistī; volueris.

600. 1. Who wishes to cross the river with me? 2. You are not satisfied, and you wish to return to (into) your native country. 3. We have always wished to have peace, but we will defend our liberty. 4. Our soldiers wish to cross the ocean and attack (**aggredior**) the enemy. 5. The senate believed that war was necessary.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What are the principal parts of **volō**? 2. Give a synopsis of **volō** in the third person singular, indicative mood. 3. Give the Latin ordinal numerals from *first* to *twentieth*. 4. Form an English sentence which will require **nōnne** when translated into Latin. 5. Give a synopsis of **fīō** in the third person plural of the indicative. 6. What is the meaning of *condescension?*

LESSON CIV

CORRELATIVES

601. Words are sometimes used in pairs with special meanings. Such pairs of words are called Correlatives. Generally these correlatives consist of repetitions of the same word.

The following are important correlative conjunctions:

et . . . et, *both . . . and*
aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*
neque . . . neque, (**nec . . . nec**), *neither . . . nor*

Et fortis et benignus est, *he is both brave and kind.*
Aut puerō aut sorōrī ejus librum dabō, *I shall give the book either to the boy or to his sister.*
Neque fortis neque benignus est, *he is neither brave nor kind.*

a. When not correlative, **neque** is translated *nor* or *and not* as has previously been seen (**554,** *a*).

602. There are certain correlative uses of some of the adjectives given in section **425**.

alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*
alter . . . alter, *one . . . the other*
aliī . . . aliī, *some . . . others*

Alius fortiter pugnat, alius fugit, *one fights bravely, another flees.*
Alter ex Hispāniā, alter ex Hiberniā vēnit, *the one came from Spain, the other from Ireland.*

a. **Alius . . . alius** refer to persons or things belonging to an indefinite number. **Alter . . . alter** indicate that only two persons or things are thought of.

b. When not used as a correlative, *one* is to be

translated by **ūnus.** When used as a correlative it is to be translated by **alius** or **alter** as the rest of the sentence requires.

603. Correlatives are not always repeated forms of the same word. They are sometimes adjectives or adverbs, the second of which serves to connect a subordinate clause to a principal clause.

tantus . . . quantus, *as great . . . as*
Glōria ejus nōn tanta est quantam semper voluit, *his fame is not as great as he has always wished.*

a. The gender, number, and case of any form of **tantus** or **quantus** are determined by the noun or pronoun, expressed or implied, which it modifies.

b. When not used as correlatives **tantus** means *so great* and **quantus** *how great.*

604. Sometimes each part of a correlative combination consists of two words.

nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*
Nōn sōlum cīvēs sed etiam servī urbem tūtam esse volunt, *not only citizens, but also slaves wish the city to be safe.*

605. VOCABULARY

Cicerō, Cicerōnis, M., Cicero, *a famous Roman orator*
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart
etiam, *adv.*, even, also
loquor, loquī, lòcūtus sum, talk
majōrēs, majōrum, M. *pl.*, ancestors
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., oration
ōrātor, -ōris, M., orator
ut, *adv.*, as

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

loquacious oratorical

EXERCISES

606. 1. Cicerō erat nōn sōlum ōrātor clārus sed etiam cīvis bonus. 2. Ōrātiōnēs ejus etiam temporibus nostrīs leguntur et laudantur. 3. Majōrēs nostrī quī hanc cīvitātem condidērunt et fortēs et sapientēs erant. 4. Neque puer neque pater ejus discessit. 5. Aut patriam nostram dēfendēmus aut prō eā moriēmur. 6. Alius pugnāre vult, alius salūtem fugā petit. 7. Alterum laudāmus, alterum accūsāmus. 8. Aliī ex urbe expellentur, aliī interficientur. 9. Gallia, ut Caesar dicit, est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs. 10. Saepe cum patre tuō dē hīs rēbus locūtus sum. 11. Postquam Caesar hoc respōnsum dedit, lēgātī discessērunt. 12. Numquam anteā tantus numerus hostium hoc flūmen trānsiit quantum nunc in Galliā esse vidēmus.

607. 1. The river which separates Gaul from the Germans is both deep and wide. 2. Neither Spain nor Italy is more beautiful than our native country. 3. One tries to flee, another defends himself. 4. Some are crossing the river, others are ascending the hill. 5. The one returned, the other was never seen again.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give examples of English correlatives. 2. What is the difference between **alius . . . alius,** and **alter . . . alter?** 3. Explain the use of **tantus** when used as a correlative, and when used without **quantus.** 4. What determines the gender, number, and case of **tantus** and **quantus?** 5. Give the Latin cardinal numerals for *three, thirteen,* and *thirty.* 6. What is an *alternative?*

COLUMN OF MARCUS AURELIUS

LESSON CV

THE GERUND

MEANING OF THE GERUND

608. Frequently a word which is used to name an act stands as the subject of a clause, or is employed in some other of the constructions of nouns. Thus, *Traveling in this region is pleasant. He is fond of walking.* Nouns of this kind ending in *-ing* are called Gerunds. In the sentences given above *traveling* and *walking* are gerunds.

DECLENSION OF THE GERUND

609. The Latin gerund is declined as a neuter noun of the second declension. Its only forms are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of the singular number. The nominative is supplied by the infinitive.[1] The gerunds of the four conjugations are declined as follows:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
GEN.	portandī	monendī	dūcendī	audiendī
DAT.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō
ACC.	portandum	monendum	dūcendum	audiendum
ABL.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō

a. The gerund of **capiō** is declined like the gerund of **audiō.**

USE OF THE GERUND

610. (1) The genitive of the gerund is used chiefly with **adjectives** or nouns denoting action or feeling. With the **ablative causā** it expresses purpose.

cupidus audiendī, *desirous of hearing.*
resistendī causā, *for the sake (purpose) of resisting.*

---

[1] The infinitive is also used as subject in indirect discourse.

a. The ablative **causā,** meaning *for the sake of* or *for the purpose of,* always stands after the genitive which depends upon it.

b. The genitive of the gerund may govern a direct object: **urbem videndī,** *of seeing the city.*

(2) The dative of the gerund is little used.

(3) The accusative of the gerund is frequently used as the object of the preposition **ad** to express purpose: **ad oppugnandum,** *for attacking, to attack.*

(4) The ablative may be used to express means or cause, or as the object of the prepositions **ab, dē, ex,** or **in**: **pugnandō,** *by fighting;* **in agendō,** *in acting* (i.e., *in action*).

611. VOCABULARY

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, approach, draw near (*usually with* **ad** *and accusative*)

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry on war

clam, *adv.,* secretly

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, fond

deus, deī, M., a god

juvenis, juvenis, M., young man

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, inquire, ask

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

accession cupidity juvenile inquire

EXERCISES

612. 1. Is rēx cupidus bellandī erat, sed culpam in (*on*) aliōs cōnferre (*lay*) cōnābātur. 2. Spem amīcōs iterum videndī nōn habēbam. 3. Lēgātī pācem petendī causā vēnerant. 4. In quaerendō (*on inquiring*) Caesar repperit arma trādita esse. 5. Helvētiī omnia ad discēdendum parāverant. 6. Et templa deōrum et tēcta cīvium ab illīs hostibus incēnsa sunt. 7. Ubi exercitus cōnsulis ad urbem accessit, multī clam discēdere cōnātī sunt. 8. Multī juvenēs quotannīs ad labōrandum in hanc terram veniunt. 9. Aliī pācis cupidī

sunt, aliī bellum gerere volunt. 10. Alter saepe in urbe nostrā fuit, alterum numquam anteā vīdimus.

613. 1. We have taken arms for the purpose of resisting. 2. These young men are not desirous of withdrawing. 3. The enemy had prepared everything for making an attack (for attacking). 4. You cannot avoid danger by fleeing. 5. That nation was neither faithful nor honorable. 6. Both the senate and the people wish to send Caesar into Gaul.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the gerunds of **laudō, habeō,** and **fugiō.** 2. Decline the gerund of **dēscendō.** 3. Give the synopsis of **quaerō** in the third person singular, active and passive, indicative mood. 4. Give examples of Latin correlatives. 5. Point out correlative words in the sentences of section **613.** 6. What is the meaning of *inquisitive?* of *exquisite?* of *requisition?*

GATE IN THE WALL OF ROME

TWENTIETH REVIEW LESSON

614. VOCABULARY REVIEW

bōs, bovis, M., F.
celeritās, -tātis, F.
cibus, -ī, M.
corōna, -ae, F.
crūdēlitās, -tātis, F.
cūra, -ae, F.
deus, deī, M.
dictātor, -ōris, M.
dīligentia, -ae, F.
dolor, -ōris, M.
flōs, flōris, M.
gaudium, -ī, N.
juvenis, juvenis, M.
lacrima, -ae, F.
majōres, -um, M.
opus, operis, N.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
ōrātor, -ōris, M.
portus, -ūs, M.
senātus, -ūs, M.
sōl, sōlis, M.
spēs, speī, F.
stultitia, -ae, F.
tyrannus, -ī, M.
vīnum, -ī, N.
voluntās, -tātis, F.
cīvīlis, -e
contentus, -a, -um
cupidus, -a, -um
externus, -a, -um
fidēlis, -e
fīnitimus, -a, -um
necessārius, -a, -um
vacuus, -a, -um
aliquis, aliqua, aliquid
accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum
cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum
conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
dēscendō, -ere, dēscendī, dēscēnsum
dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
discēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
fīō, fierī, factus sum
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum
ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum
īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum
pereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum
rebellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum
volō, velle, voluī

clam	etiam	intrā	quamquam
cotīdiē	quotannīs	nisi	ut

PUER QUĪ MENTĪRĪ NŌN POTERAT

For words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary.

615. Ōlim vir quīdam fīliō suō parvam secūrem dedit. Puer propter hoc dōnum laetus erat. In hortō erat arbor quae patrī magnopere placēbat. Hanc arborem puer secūre cecīdit. Pater īrātus erat, sed puer dīxit: "Mentīrī, pater, nōn possum; secūre meā parvā arborem cecīdī." Tum pater fīliō ignōvit[1] quod is nōn mentītus erat, et eum laudāvit. Quis erat hic puer parvus?

QUŌ MODŌ PUERĪ IN BELLŌ AUXILIUM TULĒRUNT

For words which have not previously occurred, see Final Vocabulary.

616. Patria nostra magnum bellum gerēbat et multī juvenēs quī in agrīs labōrāverant in exercitū erant. Itaque agricolae auxilium postulāvērunt. Multī puerī ex urbibus in agrōs missī sunt et agricolās juvāre cōnātī sunt. Inter hōs erat puer ex urbe nostrā. Is numquam anteā vaccam aut ovem vīderat, quod semper in urbe habitāverat. Propter īnscientiam multa errāta commīsit,[2] sed agricola in cujus agrīs labōrābat, quod homō benignus erat, nōn saepe eum accūsāvit. Is puer in eundem locum posteā rediit quod agricola esse cupiēbat.

---

[1] From **ignōscō**.

[2] **multa errāta commīsit**, *made many mistakes.*

APPENDIX

THE DERIVATION OF LATIN WORDS

617. Many Latin words are derived from other Latin words by the use of syllables or letters placed at the beginning or at the end of these words. A syllable placed at the beginning of a word is called a Prefix; a syllable placed at the end is called a Suffix. Words formed with a particular prefix or suffix regularly have special meanings given them by the prefix or suffix with which they are formed. But occasionally changes of meaning take place, so that it is not always easy to see the relation between the meaning of a word and that of the word from which it is derived.

The use of some of the most important prefixes and suffixes is as follows:

(1) Nouns ending in **-tor** (occasionally **-sor**) indicate the person who does the act expressed by the verb from which they are derived: **victor,** *a conqueror,* from **vincō.**

a. Such nouns may be formed from **moneō, capiō, dūcō, audiō,** and many other verbs.

b. These nouns in **-tor** and **-sor** are masculine. There is a corresponding feminine form, ending in **-trīx: victrīx, adiūtrīx, administrātrīx.**

(2) Names of qualities are formed from adjective stems, with the endings **-tās** and **-tūdō,** and from adjective or noun stems with the ending **-tūs.** These nouns are all feminine:

lībertās, *freedom,* from **līber.**
magnitūdō, *greatness,* from **magnus.**
virtūs, *manliness, courage,* from **vir.**

a. Nouns with the ending **-tās** may be formed from **gravis,** *heavy,* **levis,** *light,* **nōbilis,** *well-known, noble.* Some of these words came to be used as collective nouns, indicating a group of persons possessing the quality named: **nōbilitās,** originally *celebrity,* came to mean *the prominent persons* of a state.

b. Nouns with the ending **-tūdō** may be formed from **lātus,** *broad,* **altus,** *high,* **fortis,** *brave.*

c. Other nouns formed like **virtūs** are **servitūs,** *slavery,* from **servus; senectūs,** *old age,* from **senex** (*old*).

(3) Nouns formed with the ending **-lus** (**-ulus, -ellus, -illus**) are diminutives; that is, they indicate a small object. The ending is really an adjective ending, but most of the words thus derived have come to be used as nouns:

fīliolus, *a little son,* from **fīlius.**
rēgulus, *a petty king, chieftain* from **rēx** (stem **rēg-**).

a. Nouns ending in **-r** change the final **r** to **l** when **-lus** is added: **libellus,** *a little book,* from **liber; agellus,** *a little field,* from **ager.**

(4) Adjectives ending in **-ōsus** are formed from nouns, and mean *full of* or *abounding in* that which is named by the nouns from which they are derived:

perīculōsus, *full of danger, dangerous,* from **perīculum.**
annōsus, *full of years, aged,* from **annus.**

a. An adjective meaning *abounding in space* may be derived from **spatium.**

(5) Adjectives ending in **-īlis, -ālis, -ārius,** are formed from nouns and mean, originally, *belonging to, connected with,* etc., that which is denoted by the noun from which they are derived.

hostīlis, *hostile,* from **hostis.**
mortālis, *mortal,* from **mors.**
legiōnārius, *legionary,* from **legiō.**

(6) There are also certain syllables used as prefixes with special meanings.

a. The syllable **re-** or **red-** means *back* or *again:*

redīre, *to come back.* **rescrībere,** *to write in reply.*

b. Sometimes the prefix seems to have lost its force, leaving no appreciable difference between the simple verb and the derivative: **manēre, remanēre.**

(7) The syllable **in-** prefixed to adjectives means *not:*

injūstus, *not just.*
indignus, *not worthy.*

a. In English derivatives from these words the prefix usually becomes *un-: unjust, uncommon.* But sometimes it keeps its original form: *incapable, incorrect.*

b. The Latin preposition **in,** meaning *in, on,* or *against,* used to form compound verbs, is a different word.

(8) The syllable **per-** used with adjectives and adverbs means *very:*

perfacilis, *very easy.*
permultī, *very many.*

a. **per** when used with verbs means *through* or else serves to emphasize the meaning of the verb:

perrumpere, *to break through.*
perfruī, *to enjoy thoroughly.*

(9) The syllable **dis-** or **dī-** used with verbs means *apart:*

discēdere, *to go apart.*
dīmittere, *to send apart* or *away.*

(10) Most prepositions are used as prefixes to form compound verbs, usually with their original meaning. Sometimes, however, they serve merely to emphasize.

ēdūcere, *to lead out.*
trānseō, to go across.

THE FORMATION OF ENGLISH WORDS FROM LATIN

TERMINATIONS DERIVED FROM LATIN

618. As has already been stated (Lesson I), certain changes in spelling have occurred in many of the Latin words which have been taken into English. These changes in many instances have affected the endings and have given us English terminations which appear in a large number of words of different groups. These English terminations are not derived from the nominative ending of the Latin word, but for convenience the Latin nominative is given in the lists of words which follow, to indicate the general classes to which the nouns belong. Some of the most important of these terminations are as follows:

NOUN ENDINGS

(1) *-ty* from **-tās** (gen. **-tātis**)

liberty from **lībertās**; *dignity* from **dignitās**; *humanity* from **hūmānitās.**

(2) *-y, -ce, -cy* from **-ia** or **-tia.**

victory from **victōria**; *infamy* from **īnfāmia**; *temperance* from **temperantia**; *eloquence* from **ēloquentia**; *constancy* from **cōnstantia**; *frequency* from **frequentia.**

a. Some words ending in *-y* or *-e* are derived from words in **-ium**: *subsidy* from **subsidium**; *study* from **studium**; *vestige* from **vestigium**; *edifice* from **aedificium.**

(3) *-tude* from **-tūdō** (gen. **-tūdinis**).

multitude from **multitūdō**, *altitude* from **altitūdō.**

(4) *-tor* from **-tor** (gen. **-tōris**).

The words *orator, victor, dictator,* etc., have the same form in Latin as in English.

(5) *-ion* from **-iō** (gen. **-iōnis**).

nation from **nātiō**; *occasion* from **occāsiō**; *station* from **statiō**.

(6) *-ure* from **-ūra**.

nature from **nātūra**; *stature* from **statūra**; *culture* from **cultūra**.

(7) *-ment* from **-mentum**.

ornament from **ōrnāmentum**; *document* from **documentum**; *monument* from **monumentum**.

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS

(8) *-il, -ile* from **-īlis**.

civil from **cīvīlis**; *hostile* from **hostīlis**; *servile* from **servīlis**.

(9) *-al* from **-ālis**.

immortal from **immortālis**; *mural* from **mūrālis**; *triumphal* from **triumphālis**.

(10) *-ar* from **-āris**.

consular from **cōnsulāris**; *familiar* from **familiāris**; *singular* from **singulāris**.

(11) *-ary* from **-ārius**.

legionary from **legiōnārius**; *mercenary* from **mercēnārius**; *necessary* from **necessārius**.

(12) *-ose, -ous* from **-ōsus**.

bellicose from **bellicōsus**; *copious* from **copiōsus**; *seditious* from **sēditiōsus**.

(13) *-an* (*-ane*) from **-ānus**.

Roman from **Rōmānus**; *veteran* from **veterānus**; *human* (also *humane*) from **hūmānus**.

(14) *-id* from **-idus**.

horrid from **horridus**; *frigid* from **frīgidus**; *pallid* from **pallidus**.

(15) *-ent* from **-ēns** (gen. **-entis**).

frequent from **frequēns**; *patient* from **patiēns**; *innocent* from **innocēns**; *silent* from **silēns**.

a. These Latin forms in **-ēns** are mainly participles.

(16) *-ior* (*-or*) from **-ior.**

exterior, interior, junior, senior, superior, inferior, major, minor. These are comparative adjectives, and are taken from Latin without change of form.

VERB ENDING

(17) *-ate* from participial forms in **-ātum.**

create from **creō** (**creātum**); *demonstrate* from **dēmōnstrō** (**dēmōnstrātum**); *migrate* from **migrō** (**migrātum**); *narrate* from **nārrō** (**nārrātum**).

NOTE. Some English words which are formed with the endings given above are not derived directly from the Latin forms which they most closely resemble. When these endings had come to be used extensively in English, they were sometimes employed in the formation of new words from other English words. But the endings were originally derived from the Latin.

PREFIXES

619. The use of Latin prepositions as prefixes in the formation of other words is very important. Many words formed with these prefixes have been taken into English, and the prefixes are sometimes used with English words to form new words. The spelling of these prepositions was sometimes changed because of the first letter of the word with which they were used. Thus **adficiō,** from **ad** and **faciō** became **afficiō,** hence we have *affect* from the past participle **affectus.** In like manner *occur* is derived from **occurrō,** which is the compound of **ob** and **currō.** The most important prepositions used as prefixes in English derivatives are the following:

(1) **ā, ab** (**abs**), *away from, from.*
avert, absent.

(2) **ad** (sometimes becoming *ac, af, ag, al, ap, ar*), *to.*
adhere, acquire, affable, aggression, allusion, approve, arrogant.

(3) **ante,** *before.*
antecedent.

(4) **circum,** *around.*
circumnavigate.

(5) **cum,** as a prefix appearing as **com** (sometimes becoming *con, col, cor, co*), *with.*
composition, contract, collect, correct, coöperate.

(6) **contrā,** *against.*
contradict.

(7) **dē,** *from, down, about.*
depend, decline, describe.

(8) **ex, ē,** *out, out of, from.*
expose, elect, evade.

(9) **extrā,** *beyond.*
extraordinary, extradition.

(10) **in** (sometimes becoming *il, im, ir*), *in, into.*
invade, illusion, immigrant, irrigate.

(11) **inter, intro,** *between, among.*
intervene, intermission, introduction.

(12) **ob** (sometimes becoming *oc, of, op*), *against.*
observe, occur, offer, oppress.

(13) **per,** *through.*
pervade, perforate.

(14) **post,** *after.*
postpone, postscript.

(15) **prae** (in English derivatives regularly *pre*), *befor*
prefix, predict, precede.

(16) **prō,** *before, for, in favor of.*
proceed, profess.

(17) **sub** (sometimes becoming *suc, suf, sup*); *under.*
submit, succeed, suffer, support.

(18) **super,** *above.*
superintend, superfluous.

(19) **trāns** (sometimes becoming *tra*), *beyond.*
transport, transition, traverse.

619. In addition to the prepositions which have been given above, there are a few Latin prefixes which are never used as separate words. The most important of these are the following:

(1) **di-, dis-,** *apart, not.*
distract, dissimilar, discontent.

(2) **in-** (a different word from the preposition), *not.*
inevitable, incompetent.

(3) **re-, red,** *back, again.*
retract, redemption.

(4) **sē-,** *apart.*
secede, seclude.

FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES

The following list of phrases includes quotations from Latin which are frequently found in English literature, and also a number of mottoes and phrases which are in common use:

Ad astra per aspera, To the stars through difficulties (motto of Kansas).
Ad utrumque parātus, Prepared for either event.
Alter ego est amīcus, A friend is one's second self.
Aurī sacra famēs, Accursed greed for gold.
Ē plūribus ūnum, One (formed) from many (motto of the United States).
Ex animō, Sincerely.
Esse quam vidērī, To be rather than to seem.
Fāta viam invenient, The fates will find a way.
Ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt, Men usually believe willingly that which they wish.
Fīat lūx, Let there be light.
Fīat iūstitia, Let justice be done.
Fortēs fortūna iuvat, Fortune favors the brave.

Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō, I am a man, and I regard nothing as foreign to me which has to do with humanity.

Horribile dictū, Horrible to relate.

In hōc signō vincēs, In this sign you shall conquer.

Labōrāre est ōrāre, To labor is to pray.

Labor omnia vincit, Toil conquers all things.

Mēns sāna in corpore sānō, A sound mind in a sound body.

Mēns sibi cōnscius rēctī, A mind conscious in itself (to itself) of right.

Mīrābile dictū, Wonderful to say.

Montānī semper līberī, Mountaineers are always freemen (motto of West Virginia).

Nōn prōgredī est regredī Not to go forward is to go backward.

Nōn sibi sed omnibus, Not for one's self but for all.

Pāce tuā, With your permission.

Possunt quia posse videntur, They can because they think they can.

Quod erat dēmōnstrandum (abbr. *Q. E. D.*), Which was to be proved.

Semper parātus, Always ready.

Sīc ītur ad astra, Thus one rises to fame (to the stars).

Sīc semper tyrannīs, Ever thus to tyrants (motto of Virginia).

Sīc trānsit glōria mundī, Thus passes away the glory of the world.

Sine diē, Without a day (said of an assembly which adjourns without a date fixed for meeting again).

Tempora mūtantur et nōs mūtāmur in illīs, The times change and we change with them (in them).

Vincit quī patitur, He conquers who endures.

Vincit quī sē vincit, He conquers who conquers himself.

VOCABULARY FOR ORAL EXERCISES

621. The following vocabulary of grammatical terms, together with a few additional words, is given for the convenience of teachers who may wish to use Latin in giving directions for the work of the class room.

noun, *nōmen*
adjective, *adjectīvum*
pronoun, *prōnōmen*
verb, *verbum*,
adverb, *adverbium*
preposition, *praepositiō*
conjunction, *conjūnctiō*
interjection, *interjectiō*
case, *cāsus*
  nominative, *nōminātīvus*
  genitive, *genitīvus*
  dative, *datīvus*
  accusative, *accūsātīvus*
  ablative, *ablātīvus*
  vocative, *vocātīvus*
gender, *genus*
  masculine, *masculīnum*
  feminine, *fēminīnum*
  neuter, *neutrum*
person, *persōna*
  first, *prīma*
  second, *secunda*
  third, *tertia*
number, *numerus*
  singular, *singulāris*
  plural, *plūrālis*
tense, *tempus*
  present, *praesēns*
  imperfect, *imperfectum*
  future, *futūrum*
  perfect, *perfectum*
  past perfect, *praeteritum perfectum*
  future perfect, *futūrum perfectum*
voice, *vōx*
  active, *actīva*
  passive, *passīva*
mood, *modus*
  indicative, *indicātīvus*
  imperative, *imperātīvus*
  infinitive, *īnfinītīvus*
  subjunctive, *subjūnctīvus*
deponent, *dēpōnēns*
transitive, *trānsitīvum*
intransitive, *intrānsitīvum*
impersonal, *impersōnāle*
conjugatiòn, *conjugātiō*
declension, *dēclīnātiō*
blackboard, *tabula*, *-ae*
paper, *charta*
chalk, *crēta*
pencil, *stīlus*
question, *interrogātiō*
answer, *respōnsum*
decline, *dēclīnō*
conjugate, *conjugō*

SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

622. FIRST DECLENSION, **ā-stems**

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	rosa	rosae
Gen.	rosae	rosārum
Dat.	rosae	rosīs
Acc.	rosam	rosās
Abl.	rosā	rosīs

623. SECOND DECLENSION, **o-stems**

Singular

N.	dominus	puer	ager	vir	templum
G.	dominī	puerī	agrī	virī	templī
D.	dominō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
Ac.	dominum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
Ab.	dominō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

Plural

N.	dominī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
G.	dominōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
D.	dominīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
Ac.	dominōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Ab.	dominīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

NOTE.—The vocative singular of **-us** nouns ends in **-e**: ***amīce.***

624. THIRD DECLENSION

(1) CONSONANT STEMS

Singular

N.	lēx	mīles	frāter	homō
G.	lēgis	mīlitis	frātris	hominis
D.	lēgī	mīlitī	frātrī	hominī
Ac.	lēgem	mīlitem	frātrem	hominem
Ab.	lēge	mīlite	frātre	homine

Plural

N.	lēgēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
G.	lēgum	mīlitum	frātrum	hominum
D.	lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus
Ac.	lēgēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
Ab.	lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus

NOTE. — Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending **-s**. If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g**, the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **-x**: **dux,** nominative from the stem **duc-**; **lēx,** nominative from the stem **lēg-**. If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t** the final consonant is dropped before **-s**: **laus,** nominative from the stem **laud-**. If the vowel **i** stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to **e** in the nominative: **prīnceps,** nominative from the stem **prīncip-**; **mīles,** nominative from the stem **mīlit-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter**: **frāter** from the stem **frātr-**; **māter** from the stem **mātr**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-**; **multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdin-**. The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

Singular

N.	flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
G.	flūminis	capitis	corporis	itineris
D.	flūminī	capitī	corporī	itinerī
Ac.	flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
Ab.	flūmine	capite	corpore	itinere

Plural

N.	flūmina	capita	corpora	itinera
G.	flūminum	capitum	corporum	itinerum
D.	flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus
Ac.	flūmina	capita	corpora	itinera
Ab.	flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus

NOTE.—Nouns which have **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-**. A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-**.

Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us**: **corpus** from the stem **corpor-**. The nominative **iter** has the stem **itiner-**.

(2) I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

Singular

N.	hostis	caedēs	gēns
G.	hostis	caedis	gentis
D.	hostī	caedī	gentī
Ac.	hostem	caedem	gentem
Ab.	hoste	caede	gente

Plural

N.	hostēs	caedēs	gentēs
G.	hostium	caedium	gentium
D.	hostibus	caedibus	gentibus
Ac.	hostīs *or* -ēs	caedīs *or* -ēs	gentīs *or* -ēs
Ab.	hostibus	caedibus	gentibus

		Singular	
N.	īnsigne	calcar	animal
G.	īnsignis	calcāris	animālis
D.	īnsignī	calcārī	animālī
Ac.	īnsigne	calcar	animal
Ab.	īnsignī	calcārī	animālī
		Plural	
N.	īnsignia	calcāria	animālia
G.	īnsignium	calcārium	animālium
D.	īnsignibus	calcāribus	animālibus
Ac.	īnsignia	calcāria	animālia
Ab.	īnsignibus	calcāribus	animālibus

(3) IRREGULAR NOUNS

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	vīs	vīrēs	bōs	bovēs
G.	—	vīrium	bovis	boum
D.	—	vīribus	bovī	būbus *or* bōbus
Ac.	vim	vīrīs *or* -ēs	bovem	bovēs
Ab.	vī	vīribus	bove	būbus *or* bōbus

625. FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī *or* -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

626. FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

627. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(1) **bonus,** *good*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

(2) **miser,** *unhappy*

	Singular		
N.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō
	Plural		
N.	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

(3) **pulcher,** *beautiful*

	Singular		
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

		Plural	
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

628. THIRD DECLENSION

(1) THREE TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

ācer, *sharp*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs,-ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(2) TWO TERMINATIONS—(i-STEMS)

omnis, *all*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
G.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
D.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Ac.	omnem	omne	omnīs *or* -ēs	omnia
Ab.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

(3) ONE TERMINATION

	fēlīx, *fortunate*		**potēns,** *powerful*	
		Singular		
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	fēlīx	fēlīx	potēns	potēns
G.	fēlīcis	fēlīcis	potentis	potentis
D.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī	potentī
Ac.	fēlīcem	felīx	potentem	potēns
Ab.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī, -e	potentī -e

Plural

N.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	potentēs	potentia
G.	fēlīcium	fēlīcium	potentium	potentium
D.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	fēlīcīs, -ēs	fēlīcia	potentīs, -ēs	potentia
Ab.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus

629. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
G.	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
D.	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
Ac.	portantem	portāns	portantīs, -ēs	portantia
Ab.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	portantibus	portantibus

630. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	alius		**ūnus**		**alter**	
	sōlus		**tōtus**		**neuter**	
	ūllus		**nūllus**		**uter**	
N.	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
G.	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
D.	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

(*The plurals are like those of* **bonus** *and* **miser.**)

631. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlīx	fēlīcior, fēlīcius	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

632. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

633. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

lātior, *broader*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
G.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
D.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Ac.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Ab.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

plūs, *more*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	———	——	plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	———	plūs	plūrīs *or* -ēs	plūra
Ab.	———	——	plūribus	plūribus

634. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

635. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene	melius	optimē
male	pejus	pessimē
magnopere	plūs	maximē
multum	magis	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
prope	propius	proximē
saepe	saepius	saepissim
diū	diūtius	diūtissim

636. NUMERALS

Roman Numerals	*Cardinal*	*Ordinal*
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter
III.	trēs, tria	tertius
IV.	quattuor	quārtus
V.	quīnque	quīntus
VI.	sex	sextus
VII.	septem	septimus
VIII.	octō	octāvus
IX.	novem	nōnus
X.	decem	decimus
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus
XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus

XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
C.	centum	centēsimus
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsimus
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

a. DECLENSION OF **DUO, TRĒS,** and **MĪLIA**

duo, *two*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	duo	duae	duo
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

trēs, *three*

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
N.	trēs	tria
G.	trium	trium
D.	tribus	tribus
Ac.	trēs, trīs	tria
Ab.	tribus	tribus

mīlia, N., *thousands*

	Neut.
N.	mīlia
G.	mīlium
D.	mīlibus
Ac.	mīlia
Ab.	mīlibus

PRONOUNS

637. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, **ego,** *I* — Second person, **tū,** *you* (*thou*)

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
G.	meī	nostrum nostrī	tuī	vestrum vestrī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually **is,** *he,* **ea,** *she,* **id,** *it*), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive pronouns.

638. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

	First person, **meī,** *of myself*		Second person, **tuī,** *of yourself*		Third person, **suī,** *of himself, etc.*	
	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
G.	meī	nostrī	tuī	vestrī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

639. POSSESSIVES

Singular

1st pers. meus, -a, -um, *my*
2d pers. tuus, -a, -um, *your* (of one person)
3d pers. suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (reflexive)
ejus (gen. sing. of is) his, etc. (not reflexive)

Plural

1st pers.	noster, -tra, -trum, *our*
2d pers.	vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one person)
3d pers.	suus, -a, -um, *their* (reflexive) eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of **is**) *their* (not reflexive)

640. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

(1) **hic,** *this*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

(2) **ille,** *that*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

(3) **is,** *this, that, he, she, it*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
G.	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

641. THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

īdem, *the same*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	īdem	eadem	idem
G.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Plural

N.	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem
Ac.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem

642. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

643. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

644. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut,*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quis	quae	quid *or* quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid *or* quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes **quī.** In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always **quod.**

645. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

(1) **quisque,** *each*

	Singular		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque
G.	cujusque	cujusque	cujusque
D.	cuique	cuique	cuique
Ac.	quemque	quamque	quidque, quodque
Ab.	quōque	quāque	quōque

(*The plural is rare*)

(2) **quisquam,** *anyone*

	Singular	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
N.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
G.	cujusquam	cujusquam
D.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Ac.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Ab.	quōquam	quōquam

(*Plural lacking*)

(3) **quīdam,** *a certain*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
G.	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(4) **aliquis,** *some*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
G.	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Plural

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

VERBS

646. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
portō, *I carry*	portāmus, *we carry*
portās, *you carry*	portātis, *you carry*
portat, *he carries*	portant, *they carry*

IMPERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portābam, *I was carrying*	portābāmus, *we were carrying*
portābās, *you were carrying*	portābātis, *you were carrying*
portābat, *he was carrying*	portābant, *they were carrying*

FUTURE

Singular	*Plural*
portābō, *I shall carry*	portābimus, *we shall carry*
portābis, *you will carry*	portābitis, *you will carry*
portābit, *he will carry*	portābunt, *they will carry*

PERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portāvī, *I have carried, I carried*	portāvimus, *we have carried*, etc.
portāvistī, *you have carried*, etc.	portāvistis, *you have carried*, etc.
portāvit, *he has carried*, etc.	portāvērunt, -ēre, *they have carried*, etc.

PAST PERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portāveram, *I had carried*	portāverāmus, *we had carried*
portāverās, *you had carried*	portāverātis, *you had carried*
portāverat, *he had carried*	portāverant, *they had carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
portāveris, *you will have carried*
portāverit, *he will have carried*

Plural

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
portāveritis, *you will have carried*
portāverint, *they will have carried*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Sing. portā, *carry (thou)* *Plur.* portāte, *carry (ye)*

INFINITIVES

Pres. portāre, *to carry*
Past portāvisse, *to have carried*
Fut. portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. portāns, *carrying* *Fut.* portātūrus, *about to carry*

GERUND

G. portandī, *of carrying*
D. portandō, *to (for) carrying*
Ac. portandum, *carrying*
Ab. portandō *from, by carrying*

647. *PASSIVE VOICE*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
portor, *I am carried*	portāmur, *we are carried*
portāris, -re, *you are carried*	portāminī, *you are carried*
portātur, *he is carried*	portantur, *they are carried*

IMPERFECT

Singular

portābar, *I was (being) carried*
portābāris, -re, *you were (being) carried*
portābātur, *he was (being) carried*

Plural

portābāmur, *we were (being) carried*
portābāminī, *you were (being) carried*
portābantur, *they were (being) carried*

FUTURE

Singular

portābor, *I shall be carried*
portāberis, -re, *you will be carried*
portābitur, *he will be carried*

Plural

portābimur, *we shall be carried*
portābiminī, *you will be carried*
portābuntur, *they will be carried*

PERFECT

Singular

portātus sum, *I have been carried*
portātus es, *you have been carried*
portātus est, *he has been carried*

Plural

portātī sumus, *we have been carried*
portātī estis, *you have been carried*
portātī sunt, *they have been carried*

PAST PERFECT

Singular

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
portātus erās, *you had been carried*
portātus erat, *he had been carried*

Plural

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*
portātī erant, *they had been carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

Plural

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

INFINITIVES

Pres. amārī, *to be loved*
Past amātus esse, *to have been loved*
Fut. amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLE

Past portātus, *having been carried*

ROMAN BUCKLES

648. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
monēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
monet	dūcit	capit	audit
monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
monētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

IMPERFECT

monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
monēbātis	dūcēbatis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

FUTURE

monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient

PERFECT

monuī, etc.	dūxī, etc.	cēpī, etc.	audīvī, etc.

PAST PERFECT

monueram, etc.	dūxeram, etc.	cēperam, etc.	audīveram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

monuerō, etc.	dūxerō, etc.	cēperō, etc.	audīverō, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē	dūc	cape	audī
monēte	dūcite	capite	audīte

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns

FUTURE

monitūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monēre	dūcere	capere	audīre

PAST

monuisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audīvisse

FUTURE

monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse

GERUND

monendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī
monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

›r	dūcor	capior	audior
'is, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audīris, -re
;ur	dūcitur	capitur	audītur
nur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
ninī	dūciminī	capiminī	audīminī
ıtur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT

›ar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
›āris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
›ātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
›āmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
›āminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
›antur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

›or	dūcar	capiar	audiar
›eris, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
›itur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
›imur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
›iminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
›untur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT

us sum	ductus sum	captus sum	audītus sum

PAST PERFECT

us eram	ductus eram	captus eram	audītus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

us erō	ductus erō	captus erō	audītus erō

PARTICIPLE

PAST

monitus	ductus	captus	audītus

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monērī	dūcī	capī	audīrī

PERFECT

monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	audītus esse

FUTURE

monitum īrī	ductum īrī	captum īrī	audītum īrī

650. **DEPONENT VERBS**

I. **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**
II. **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**
III. **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
IV. **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I.	II.	III.	IV.
cōnor	polliceor	sequor	potior
cōnāris, -re	pollicēris, -re	sequeris, -re	potīris, -re
cōnātur	pollicētur	sequitur	potītur
cōnāmur	pollicēmur	sequimur	potīmur
cōnāminī	pollicēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
cōnāntur	pollicentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

IMPERFECT

cōnābar	pollicēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar

FUTURE

cōnābor	pollicēbor	sequar	potiar

PERFECT

cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	potīrī

PAST

cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse

FUTURE

cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

cōnāns	pollicēns	sequēns	potiēns

PAST

cōnātus	pollicitus	secūtus	potītus

FUTURE ACTIVE

cōnātūrus	pollicitūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus

GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	pollicendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

651. CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*
es, *you are*	estis, *you are*
est, *he, she, it is*	sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*	erāmus, *we were*
erās, *you were*	erātis, *you were*
erat, *he, she, it was*	erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*	erimus, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	eritis, *you will be*
erit, *he, she, it will be*	erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, I was*	fuimus, *we have been, we were*
fuistī, *you have been, you were*	fuistis, *you have been, you were*
fuit, *he, she, it has been, was*	fuērunt *or* -ēre, *they have been, etc.*

PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been*	fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerat, *he, she, it had been*	fuerant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he, she, it will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

	Singular	*Plural*
2d pers.	es, *be* (*thou*)	este, *be* (*ye*)

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

INFINITIVES

Pres. esse, *to be*
Past fuisse, *to have been*
Fut. futūrus esse *or* fore, *to be about to be*

652. CONJUGATION OF **POSSUM**

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
possum	possumus	potuī	potuimus
potes	potestis	potuistī	potuistis
potest	possunt	potuit	potuērunt

IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
poteram	poterāmus	potueram	potuerāmus
poterās	poterātis	potuerās	potuerātis
poterat	poterant	potuerat	potuerant

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
poterō	poterimus	potuerō	potuerimus
poteris	poteritis	potueris	potueritis
poterit	poterunt	potuerit	potuerint

INFINITIVES

Pres. posse *Past* potuisse

653. CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Active		*Passive*	
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, -re	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

IMPERFECT

ferēbam	ferēbāmus	ferēbar	ferēbāmur

FUTURE

feram	ferēmus	ferar	ferēmur

PERFECT

tulī	tulimus	lātus sum	lātī sumus

PAST PERFECT

tuleram	tulerāmus	lātus eram	lātī erāmus

FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	tulerimus	lātus erō	lātī erimus

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d pers. fer ferte

INFINITIVES

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Past	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES

	Active		*Passive*
Pres.	ferēns	*Past*	lātus
Fut.	lātūrus		

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

654. CONJUGATION OF EŌ

Principal parts: **eō, īre, iī** *or* **īvī, itum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
eō	īmus	iī	iimus
īs	ītis	īstī (iistī)	īstis (iistis)
it	eunt	iit	iērunt

IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
ībam	ībāmus	ieram	ierāmus
ībās	ībātis	ierās	ierātis
ībat	ībant	ierat	ierant

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
ībō	ībimus	ierō	ierimus
ībis	ībitis	ieris	ieritis
ībit	ībunt	ierit	ierint

a. Forms are sometimes found in the perfect system with the stem **īv-**, as **īvī, īveram,** etc.

IMPERATIVE

Pres., 2d pers. ī, īte

INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLES	
Pres.	īre	*Pres.*	iēns (*gen.* euntis)
Past	iisse *or* īsse	*Fut.*	itūrus
Fut.	itūrus esse		

GERUND

eundī, etc.

655. CONJUGATION OF **FĪŌ**

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
fīō	—	factus sum	factī sumus
fīs	—	factus es	factī estis
fit	fīunt	factus est	factī sunt

IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
fīēbam	fīēbamus	factus eram	factī erāmus
fīēbās	fīēbātis	factus erās	factī erātis
fīēbat	fīēbant	factus erat	factī erant

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
fīam	fīēmus	factus erō	factī erimus
fīēs	fīētis	factus eris	factī eritis
fīet	fīent	factus erit	factī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Pres., 2d pers. fī, fīte

INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	fierī	*Perf.*	factus
Past	factus esse		
Fut.	factum īrī		

656. CONJUGATION OF VOLŌ

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
volō	volumus	voluī	voluimus
vīs	vultis	voluistī	voluistis
vult	volunt	voluit	voluērunt

IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
volēbam	volēbāmus	volueram	voluerāmus
volēbās	volēbātis	voluerās	voluerātis
volēbat	volēbant	voluerat	voluerant

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
volam	volēmus	voluerō	voluerimus
volēs	volētis	volueris	volueritis
volet	volent	voluerit	voluerint

INFINITIVES

Pres.	velle
Past	voluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns

REVIEW OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

657. (1) Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. **91, 217.**

(2) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause. **396.**

(3) A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the word which it explains. **113.**

(4) A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. **68.**

CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

658. (1) The nominative is the case of the subject or predicate. **18.**

THE GENITIVE

659. (1) The genitive is the case of the possessor. (*Genitive of Possession.*) **18.**

(2) With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to denote the whole of that to which the part belongs. (*Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.*) **368.**

(3) The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Genitive of Description.*) **431.**

THE DATIVE

660. (1) The indirect object is put in the dative case. (*Dative of Indirect Object.*) **22.**

(2) The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, pleasing, dear, useful, near,* and some others. (*Dative with Adjectives.*) **24.**

(3) Most verbs meaning *to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare* govern the dative. (*Dative with Special Verbs.*) **530.**

(4) Verbs compounded with **ante, ob, prae,** and **sub,** frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative

case. This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of **ad, circum, con-, in, inter, post, prō,** and **super.** (*Dative with Compounds.*) **553.**

THE ACCUSATIVE

661. (1) The direct object of a verb is in the accusative. (*Accusative as Direct Object.*) **18.**

(2) A noun which is used to tell how long an act or a situation continues is put in the accusative. (*Accusative of Duration of Time.*) **233.**

(3) The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space. (*Accusative of Extent of Space.*) **390.**

(4) Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative case. (*Accusative with Prepositions.*) **162.**

THE ABLATIVE

662. (1) Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, be absent,* and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with **ab** or **ex.** (*Ablative of Separation.*) **552.**

(2) With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab.** (*Ablative of Agent.*) **136.**

(3) The ablative with **in** denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. (*Ablative of Place.*) **37.**

(4) The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition. (*Ablative of Time.*) **367.**

(5) The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act. (*Ablative of Accompaniment.*) **135.**

(6) The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum,** is used to express manner. (*Ablative of Manner.*) **570.**

(7) A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition. (*Ablative of Means.*) **280.**

(8) A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. (*Ablative Absolute.*) **456.**

(9) The measure or degree of difference is expressed by the ablative. (*Ablative of Degree of Difference.*) **408.**

(10) The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true. (*Ablative of Respect* or *Specification.*) **389.**

(11) The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Ablative of Description.*) **432.**

(12) The ablative is used to express cause. (*Ablative of Cause.*) **561.**

(13) **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative. (*Ablative with Certain Deponents.*) **479.**

THE VOCATIVE

663. The vocative denotes the person addressed. **539.**

MOODS

THE INDICATIVE

664. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply as answer a statement of fact. **39.**

THE IMPERATIVE

665. The imperative is used to express commands. **547.**

THE INFINITIVE

666. (1) The infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb, by denoting an action of the subject of the verb on which it depends. **358.**

(2) The infinitive with subject accusative is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing,* and the like. **494.**

THE GERUND

667. The gerund is a verbal noun, used only in four cases and in the singular number. The cases in which it is used are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative. **609.**

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be distant, be absent
accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, approach, draw near
accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse, blame, reprimand
ācer, ācris, ācre, spirited, bold, sharp
aciēs, aciēī, F., line of battle
ācriter, *adv.*, fiercely
acūtus, -a, -um, sharp
ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward
addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, add
adventus, -ūs, M., arrival
adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build
aequus, -a, -um, level, even
aestās, -tātis, F., summer
aeternus, -a, -um, eternal, undying
Āfrica, -ae, F., Africa
ager, agrī, M., field
aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, attack
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive, do
agricola, -ae, M., farmer
aliquis *or* **aliquī, aliqua, aliquid** *or* **aliquod,** some one, something, some
alius, -a, -ud, another. **alius . . . alius,** one . . . another
alter, altera, alterum, the other. **alter . . . alter,** one . . . the other
altitūdō, -inis, F., height, depth
altus, -a, -um, high, deep
ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, walk
amīcitia, -ae, F., friendship
amīcus, -ī, M., friend
āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum, lose
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, love
ancora, -ae, F., anchor
angulus, -ī, M., corner
angustus, -a, -um, narrow
animal, animālis, -ium, N., animal
animus, -ī, M., courage, spirit
annus, -ī, M., year
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before
anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before
aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum, open
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call
appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*takei dative*), approach
aqua, -ae, F., water
aquila, -ae, F., eagle
arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum, think
arbor, arboris, F., tree
arcus, -ūs, M., bow
ars, artis, -ium, F., art
arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, arms, weapons
armātus, -a, -um, armed
arō, arāre, arāvī, arātum, plow
ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum, ascend
auctōritās, -tātis, F., influence, authority
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, increase
aurum, -ī, N., gold
aut, *conj.*, or. **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or
auxilium, -ī, N., help, aid
avāritia, -ae, F., avarice, greed
avārus, -a, -um, avaricious, covetous
avis, avis, -ium, F., bird
avunculus, -ī, M., uncle

B

barba, -ae, F., beard
barbarus, -ī, M., barbarian
bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry on war
bellum, -ī, N., war
bene, *adv.*, well
beneficium, -ī, N., kindness, favor
benignus, -a, -um, kind
bēstia, -ae, F., beast
biennium, -ī, N., two years
bis, *adv.*, twice
bonus, -a, -um, good
bōs, bovis, M., F., ox, cow; *pl.*, cattle
brevis, -e, short
Britannia, -ae, F., Great Britain

C

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall
caedēs, caedis, -ium, F., slaughter, massacre
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, cut, cut down
caelum, -ī, N., sky
Caesar, -aris, M., Caesar, *a Roman name*
calamitās, -tātis, F., disaster
calcar, calcāris, -ium, N., spur
campus, -ī, M., plain
canis, canis, M., F., dog
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, sing
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture
captīvus, -ī, M., prisoner
caput, capitis, N., head
carrus, -ī, M., cart
cārus, -a, -um, dear
castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt
castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, camp
cāsus, -ūs, M., accident, occurrence, mischance
causa, -ae, F., cause, reason
celer, celeris, celere, swift
celeritās, -tātis, F., speed
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal
centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion
cibus, -ī, M., food
Cicerō, -ōnis, M., Cicero, *a famous Roman orator*
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around, about
circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround
cīvīlis, -e, civil
cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M., citizen
cīvitās, -tātis, F., state
clam, *adv.*, secretly
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cry out, shout
clārus, -a, -um, famous, distinguished; bright, clear
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, close
coepī, coepisse, *defective*, began
cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, find out; *perf.*, know
cohors, cohortis, -ium, F., cohort, *a division of the Roman army*
collis, collis, -ium, M., hill
colloquium, -ī, N., interview, conference
commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, mention
committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, unite, undertake, commit; **proelium committere,** begin battle
commūnis, -e, common
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill, fill up
concilium, -ī, N., council
concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, run together
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, condemn

condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, found, establish
condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, collect
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring together, collect
cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, complete
cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum (*takes dative*), trust
cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, confess
cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum, try, attempt
cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan, counsel, advice
cōnstantia, -ae, F., constancy
cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, decide, determine; station
cōnsul, cōnsulis, M., consul, *one of the two chief magistrates at Rome*
contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, contend, fight; hasten
contentus, -a, -um, satisfied, contented
contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against
conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, assemble
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call together
cōpia, -ae, F., plenty; *pl.*, forces, troops
Cornēlia, -ae, F., Cornelia (*name of a woman or girl*)
cornū, -ūs, N., horn; wing (*of an army*)
corōna, -ae, F., garland, crown
corpus, corporis, N., body
cotīdiē, *adv.*, every day, daily
crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, believe, trust
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, elect
crūdēlitās, -tātis, F., cruelty
culpa, -ae, F., fault, blame
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, fond
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, wish, desire
cūr, *adv.*, why
cūra, -ae, F., care
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run

D

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; concerning
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe, ought
decem, *indeclinable numeral*, ten
dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum, defend
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, exhausted
deinde, *adv.*, next
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy
dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out, show
dēnique, *adv.*, finally
dēns, dentis, M., tooth
dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, ward off
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, descend
dētrīmentum, -ī, N., loss
deus, -ī, M., a god
dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say
dictātor, -ōris, M., dictator
diēs, diēī, M., F., day
difficilis, -e, difficult
dīligentia, -ae, F., watchfulness, diligence
dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, dismiss

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart
dissimilis, -e, dissimilar, unlike
diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide, separate
dō, dare, dedī, datum, give
dolor, dolōris, M., sorrow, suffering
domicilium, -ī, N., residence, dwelling-place
dominus, -ī, M., master
dōnum, -ī, N., gift
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead
duo, duae, duo, *num. adj.*, two
duplex, *gen.* **duplicis,** double, two-fold
dux, ducis, M., leader

E

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from, from within, out of
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out
efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish
ego, meī, I
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, go out, depart
ēloquentia, -ae, F., eloquence
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy
eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, go
epistula, -ae, F., letter
equitātus, -ūs, M., cavalry
equus, equī, M., horse
ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, take away, rescue
errātum, -ī, N., error, mistake
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wander
et, *conj.*, and
etiam, *adv.*, also, even
exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, go out
excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *withdraw,* go out
exercitus, -ūs, M., army
expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, expect, await, wait for, wait
expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out, expel
explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, explore
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm, capture
externus, -a, -um, foreign

F

fābula, -ae, F., story, tale
facile, *adv.*, easily
facilis, -e, easy
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do
factum, -ī, N., deed, action
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, favor
fēlīx, *gen.* **fēlīcis,** fortunate, happy
fēmina, -ae, F., woman
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, bring, carry, endure
ferōx, *gen.* **ferōcis,** fierce
fertilis, -e, fertile
ferus, -a, -um, fierce, wild
fidēlis, -e, faithful
fīō, fierī, factus sum, become, be made
fīlia, -ae, F., daughter
fīlius, fīliī *or* **fīlī,** M., son
finis, fīnis, -ium, M. end; *pl.* country
finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring
firmus, -a, -um, strong, firm
flōs, flōris, M., flower
flūctus, -ūs, M., wave
flūmen, flūminis, N., river
folium, -ī, N., leaf
fortis, forte, brave
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely
fortūna, -ae, F., fortune
fossa, -ae, F., ditch
frāter, frātris, M., brother
frīgidus, -a, -um, cold

frūmentum, -ī, N., grain
fuga, -ae, F., flight
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rout, put to flight

G

Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul
Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul; *pl.*, the Gauls
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice, be glad
gaudium, -ī, N., joy
gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation, tribe
Germānī, -ōrum, M., *pl.*, the Germans
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, carry, carry on, wage
gladius, -ī, M., sword
glōria, -ae, F., glory, fame
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing
gravis, -e, heavy

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, live, dwell
hasta, -ae, F., spear
Helvētiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Helvetians
herī, *adv.*, yesterday
Hibernia, -ae, F., Ireland
hic, haec, hoc, this
hīc, *adv.*, here
hiems, hiemis, F., winter
Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain
hodiē, *adv.*, today
homō, hominis, M., man
honestus, -a, -um, honorable
hōra, -ae, F., hour
hortus, -ī, M., garden
hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy
humilis, -e, low

I

ibi, *adv.*, there
īdem, eadem, idem, same, the same
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit
igitur, *conj.*, therefore
ignis, ignis, -ium, M., fire
ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, pardon (*takes dative*)
ille, illa, illud, that
impedīmentum, -ī, N., hindrance; *pl.*, baggage
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hinder
imperātor, -ōris, M., general, commander
impetus, -ūs, M., attack
implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, implore
in, *prep. with abl.*, in, on
in, *prep. with acc.*, into
incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set fire to, burn; irritate, make angry
incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin
incognitus, -a, -um, unknown
incolō, -ere, -uī, inhabit
inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place
industria, -ae, F., industry
īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring upon, cause; **bellum īnferre,** make war on
ingēns, *gen.* **ingentis,** huge, large
ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, enter
inimīcus, -ī, M., enemy
initium, -ī, N., beginning
injūria, -ae, F., injury
innocentia, -ae, F., innocence
īnscientia, -ae, F., ignorance
īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium, N., badge, decoration
īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up, arrange

insula, -ae, F., island
inter, *prep. with acc.*, among, between
interdum, *adv.*, sometimes
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill
intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within
inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, find
invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, invite
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself; *pl.*, themselves
īrātus, -a, -um, angry
is, ea, id, this, that; *as pron.*, he, she, it
Italia, -ae, F., Italy
itaque, *conj.*, and so, accordingly
item, *adv.*, also
iter, itineris, N., road, march, journey
iterum, *adv.*, again

J

jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactus, throw
jam, *adv.*, already, now; **nōn jam,** no longer
jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum, order, command
jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, join, fasten together
jūstitia, -ae, F., justice
juvenis, juvenis, M., young man
juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum, help
juxtā, *prep. with acc.*, next to, near

L

Labiēnus, -ī, M., Labienus, *a Roman name. Titus Atius Labienus, an officer in Caesar's army*
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, work
lacrima, -ae, F., tear
lacus, -ūs, M., lake
laetus, -a, -um, joyful, happy
lātē, *adv.*, widely, far and wide, extensively
lātitūdō, -inis, F., width
lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, praise
lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant, ambassador
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, read, choose
lēx, lēgis, F., law
libenter, *adv.*, willingly, with pleasure
liber, librī, M., book
līber, lībera, līberum, free
līberī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, children
lībertās, -tātis, F., freedom
licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is permitted, one may
lingua, -ae, F., language, tongue
lītus, lītoris, N., shore
locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum** N., *and* **locī, -ōrum,** M.), place
longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance
longus, -a, -um, long
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play
lūna, -ae, F., moon
lūx, lūcis, F., light

M

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly
magnus, -a, -um, large, great
majōrēs, -um, M. *pl.*, ancestors
male, *adv.*, badly
malus, -a, -um, bad
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain
manus, -ūs, F., hand; band (*of armed men*)

Mārcus, -ī, M., Marcus *or* Mark (*name of a man or boy*)
mare, maris, N., sea
māter, mātris, F., mother
mēnsis, mēnsis, M., month
mentior, -īrī, mentītus sum, tell a falsehood, lie
metuō, -ere, -uī, fear
meus, -a, -um, my, mine
migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, migrate, remove
mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier
mille, *pl.*, **mīlia (-ium),** thousand
miser, misera, miserum, unhappy
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send
modus, -ī, M., manner, kind
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, warn, advise
mōns, montis, -ium, M., mountain
mora, -ae, F., delay
morior, morī, mortuus sum, die
mors, mortis, F., death
mōs, mōris, M., custom
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move
mox, *adv.*, soon, presently
multitūdō, -inis, F., multitude
multus, -a, -um, much; *pl.*, many
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify
mūrus, -ī, M., wall
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, change

N

nam, *conj.*, for
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tell, relate
nāsus, -ī, M., nose
nātūra, -ae, F., nature
nauta, -ae, M., sailor
nāvis, nāvis, -ium, F., ship, boat
-ne, *see p. 249*
nec, *see* **neque**
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, unavoidable
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, kill
nēmō, *dat.*, **nēminī,** *acc.* **nēminem** (*no gen. or abl.*), M., F., no one
neque *or* **nec,** *conj.*, nor, and . . . not. **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor
neuter, -tra, -trum, neither
nihil, *indecl.*, N., nothing
nisi, *conj.*, unless, if not
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, injure
nōmen, nōminis, N., name
nōn, *adv.*, not
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet
nōnne, *see p. 199*
noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours
novem, *indecl. num.*, nine
novus, -a, -um, new
nox, noctis, F., night
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, F., cloud
nūllus, -a, -um, no, none
numerus, -ī, M., number
numquam, *adv.*, never
nunc, *adv.*, now
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, announce, report
nūntius, -ī, M., messenger

O

obses, obsidis, M., hostage
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize
Ōceanus, -ī, M., the ocean
octō, *indecl. num.*, eight
ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time
omnis, omne, all, every
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, it is necessary, one ought
oppidānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town
oppidum, -ī, N., town
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, attack
opus, operis, N., work, task

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., oration
ōrātor, -ōris, M., orator
ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum, show, point out
ovis, ovis, -ium, M , F., sheep

P

parātus, -a, -um, prepared
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, obey
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare
pars, partis, -ium, F., part
parvus, -a, -um, small
passus, -ūs, M., pace; **mīlle passūs,** mile
pateō, -ēre, -uī, extend
pater, patris, M., father
patria, -ae, F., country
paucī, -ae, -a, few, a few
pāx, pācis, F., peace
pecūnia, -ae, F., money
per, *prep. with acc.*, through
pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, perish
perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous
perīculum, -ī, N., danger
persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive
pēs, pedis, M., foot
petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, seek, ask; attack
pictūra, -ae, F., picture
pīlum, -ī, N., javelin
piscis, piscis, -ium, M., fish
placeō, -ēre, -uī, please
plānus, -a, -um, level, flat
poena, -ae, F., punishment
poēta, -ae, M., poet
polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, promise
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place
pōns, pontis, M., bridge
populus, -ī, M., people
porta, -ae, F., gate, door
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry
portus, -ūs, M., harbor
possum, posse, potuī, be able, can
post, *prep. with acc.*, behind, after
posteā, *adv.*, afterward
postquam, *conj.*, after
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand
potēns, *gen.* **potentis,** powerful
potentia, -ae, F., power
potior, -īrī, potītus sum, gain possession of
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, surpass
praeda, -ae, F., booty, spoil
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, place in charge of, place in command of
praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send ahead
praemium, -ī, N., reward
praesidium, -ī, N., guard, garrison
praesum, -esse, -fuī, be in command of, be in charge of
prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, grasp
prīmō, *adv.*, at first
prīmus, -a, -um, first
prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of; for, on behalf of, for the sake of
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, approve, approve of
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, advance, proceed
proelium, -ī, N., battle
profundus, -a, -um, deep
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten, hurry
propius, *comp. adv.*, nearer
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of

prōvincia, -ae, F., province
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next
puella, -ae, F., girl
puer, puerī, M., boy
pugna, -ae, F., fight, battle
pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful

Q

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, inquire, ask
quam, *adv.*, than, as, how
quamquam, *conj.*, although
quantus, -a, -um, how great, how large. **tantus . . . quantus,** as large . . . as
quattuor, *indecl. num.*, four
-que, *conj.*, and
queror, querī, questus sum, complain
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* **quiddam,** a certain, a certain one
quīnque, *indecl. num.*, five
quis, quae, quid, who? which? what?
quisque, quidque, each, each one, each man
quod, *conj.*, because
quoque, *conj.*, also
quotannīs, *adv.*, every year, yearly

R

rebellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rebel, make war again
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive
reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give back, return
redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, return
rēgīna, -ae, F., queen
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reign, rule (*as king*)
rēgnum, -ī, N., royal power, kingdom
relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictum, leave
reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repulse
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, find
repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reject
rēs, reī, F., thing, affair
resistō, -sistere, -stitī, resist
respōnsum, -ī, N., reply, answer
retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, restrain
rex, rēgis, M., king
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh
rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*)
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask
Rōma, -ae, F., Rome
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman (*as adjective*)
Rōmānus, -ī, M., a Roman; *pl.*, the Romans
rosa, -ae, F., rose
rota, -ae, F., wheel
rūrsus, *adv.*, again

S

sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred
saepe, *adv.*, often
sagitta, -ae, F., arrow
salūs, salūtis, F., safety
sapiēns, *gen.* **sapientis,** wise
satis, *adv.*, enough
saxum, -ī, N., rock, stone
scālae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, stairway
schola, -ae, F., school
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write
scūtum, -ī, N., shield

secūris, secūris, F., axe, hatchet
sed, *conj.*, but
semper, *adv.*, always
senātus, -ūs, M., senate
septem, *indecl. num.*, seven
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, save
servus, -ī, M., slave, servant
sex, *indecl. num.*, six
sī, *conj.*, if
sīc, *adv.*, so, thus
signum, -ī, N., signal
silva, -ae, F., forest
similis, -e, like, similar
simul, *adv.*, at the same time
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left-hand
situs, -ūs, M., site, location
socius, -ī, M., ally
sōl, sōlis, M., sun
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
sōlum, *adv.*, only
sōlus, -a, -um, alone
sonus, -ī, M., sound
soror, sorōris, F., sister
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hope
spēs, speī, F., hope
statim, *adv.*, at once
statua, -ae, F., statue
stella, -ae, F., star
stīpendium, -ī, N., tax, tribute
stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, stand
stultitia, -ae, F., folly
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly
suī, *reflexive pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, defeat, overcome
suus, -a, -um, *reflexive*, his, her, its, *their;* his own, her own, *etc.*

T

tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still
tantus, -a, -um, so great, so large. **tantus . . . quantus,** as large . . . as
tēctum, -ī, N., roof, house
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect
tēlum, -ī, N., weapon
temperantia, -ae, F., temperance
tempestās, -tātis, F., storm
templum, -ī, N., temple
tempus, temporis, N., time
teneō, -ēre, -uī, hold
terminus, -ī, M., boundary, end
terra, -ae, F., land
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten
timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear
timor, -ōris, M., fear
tot, *indeclinable adj.*, so many
tōtus, -a, -um, the whole of, all
tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, treat
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, surrender (*transitive*)
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, on the other side of
trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, cross
trēs, tria, *num. adj.*, three
tū, tuī, you
tuba, -ae, F., trumpet
tum, *adv.*, then, at that time
tūtus, -a, -um, safe
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*referring to one person*)
tyrannus, -ī, M., tyrant

U

ubi, *adv.*, when, where
ūllus, -a, -um, any
ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond
ūnā, *adv.*, at the same time, together, along
ūnus, -a, -um, one

, **urbis, -ium,** F., city
lv., as
-tra, -trum, which (*of two*)
ūtī, ūsus sum, use
-ōris, F., wife

V

ı, **-ae,** F., cow
ıs, **-a, -um,** vacant, empty
farewell (*imperative of* **valeō,**
'e, **-uī, -itūrus**)
us, **-a, -um,** strong
s, **vallis,** F., valley
m, **-ī,** N., rampart, wall
s, **-a, -um,** various
, **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** lay waste
), **-īre, vēnī, ventum,** come
ıs, **-ī,** M., wind
ım, **-ī,** N., word
ır, **-ērī, veritus sum,** fear
ı, **-a, -um,** true
r, **vestra, vestrum,** your, yours
ferring to more than one person)
ae, F., road, street, way

victor, -ōris, M., victor, conqueror; *as adj.*, victorious
victōria, -ae, F., victory
vīcus, -ī, M., village
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see
vīlla, -ae, F., villa, country house
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat
vīnum, -ī, N., wine
vir, virī, M., man
virtūs, -tūtis, F., courage
vīs (*see section* **339**), F., force, violence; *pl.* strength
vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum, go to see, visit
vīta, -ae, F., life
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly
volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing
voluntās, -tātis, F., wish
vōx, vōcis, F., voice
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound
vulnus, vulneris, N., wound

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able, be able, possum, posse, potuī
accomplish, efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
account, on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*
accustomed, be accustomed, soleō, -ēre, solitus sum
across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*
act, factum, -ī, N.
advance, prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
after, (*prep.*) post, *with acc.*
after (*conj.*), postquam
afterward, posteā, *adv.*
again, rūrsus; iterum, *advs.*
aid, auxilium, -ī, N.
all, every, omnis, -e
ally, socius, -ī, M.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus
already, jam, *adv.*
also, item, *adv.*, quoque, *conj.*
although, quamquam, *conj.*
always, semper, *adv.*
among, inter, *prep. with acc.*
anchor, ancora, -ae, F.
and, et; **and so,** itaque
animal, animal, animālis, N.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
another, alius, -a, -ud
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
approve, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
armed, armātus, -a, -um
arms, arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, M.
arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.
art, ars, artis, F.
ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum
at once, statim, *adv.*
attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, M.
attack (*verb*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum
avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
await, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
away, be away, be distant, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus

B

bad, malus, -a, -um
badge, īnsigne, īnsignis, N.
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, M.
battle, pugna, -ae, F.; proelium, -ī, N.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus. **be distant, be absent,** absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus. **be in command of,** praesum, -esse, -fuī
bear, endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
beast, bēstia, -ae, F.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
because, quod
before, ante, *prep. with acc.*
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptum, *defective verb*
believe, crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
blame, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
boat, nāvis, nāvis, F.
body, corpus, corporis, N.
bold, ācer, ācris, ācre
book, liber, librī, M.
both . . . and, et . . . et

boy, puer, -ī, M.
brave, fortis, -e
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
bring, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
broad, lātus, -a, -um
brother, frāter, frātris, M.
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
burn, incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum
but, sed
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum
by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, M.
call, name, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
call together, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
can, am able, possum, posse, potuī
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
care, cūra, -ae, F.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
cart, carrus, -ī, M.
cattle, bovēs, *gen.* boum (*pl. of bōs*)
cause, causa, -ae, F.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, M.
censure, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
certain, a certain, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* quiddam
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
charge, place in charge of, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M.
city, urbs, urbis, -ium, F.
close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum
cloud, nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, F.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, -ium, F.
collect, condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum; cōnfero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum
command, be in command of, praesum, -esse, -fuī
command, place in command of, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
commander, imperātor, -ōris, M.
complete, cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
conceal, -cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
condemn, condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.
contend, contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, F.
council, concilium, -I, N.
country, fīnēs, -ium, M. *pl.*; **native country,** patria, -ae, F.
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum
cut, cut down, caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, N.
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
daughter, fīlia, -ae, F.
day, diēs, diēī, M., F.
daybreak, prīma lūx, prīmae lūcis
dear, cārus, -a, -um
decide, cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum
deep, altus, -a, -um
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum
defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum
delay, mora, -ae, F.

demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
depth, altitūdō, -inis, F.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
dictator, dictātor, -ōris, M.
difficult, difficilis, -e
difficulty, with difficulty, vix, *adv.*
distant, be distant, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus
distinguished, clārus, -a, -um
ditch, fossa, -ae, F.
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
draw up, īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum

E

each, quisque, quidque
eagle, aquila, -ae, F.
easily, facile, *adv.*
easy, facilis, -e
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
eloquence, ēloquentia, -ae, F.
enemy, *a public enemy,* hostis, hostis, M.; *a personal enemy,* inimīcus, -ī, M.
enter, ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum
everlasting, aeternus, -a, -um
every year, quotannīs, *adv.*
everything, all things, omnia, N. *pl. of* omnis
explore, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
extend, pateō, -ēre, -uī

F

faithful, fidēlis, -e
fame, glōria, -ae, F.
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far, longē, *adv.*
far and wide, lātē, *adv.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, M.
fasten together, jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum
father, pater, patris, M.
fault, culpa, -ae, F.
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum
fear (*noun*), timor, -ōris, M.
fear (*verb*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum
few, a few, paucī, -ae, -a
field, ager, agrī, M.
fifteen, quīndecim
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum
fill, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
finally, dēnique, *adv.*
find, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum; inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
fire, ignis, ignis, -ium, M.
first, prīmus, -a, -um
fish, piscis, piscis, -ium, M.
five, quīnque
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus
flight, fuga, -ae, F.
flower, flōs, flōris, M.
fly, volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
follow, sequor, sequ., secūtus sum
foot, pēs, pedis, M.
for, on behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl.*
forces, troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
foreign, externus, -a, -um
forest, silva, -ae, F.
formerly, anteā, *adv.*
fort, castellum, -ī, N.
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
found, condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
four, quattuor
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um
free, līber, lībera, līberum
friend, amīcus, -ī, M.
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum

ab; ē, ex; dē, *preps. with*

front of, prō, *prep. with*

G

ssession of, potior, potīrī, s sum
ortus, -ī, M.
praesidium, -ī, N.
ta, -ae, F.
Gaul, Gallus, -ī, M.
country), Gallia, -ae, F.
imperātor, -ōris, M.
s, Germānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
lla, -ae, F.
dare, dedī, datum
k, reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus
xeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum
um, -ī, N.
nus, -a, -um
ūmentum, -ī, N.
agnus, -a, -um
magnopere, *adv.*

H

ēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis; laetus, -a,

portus, -ūs, M.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
ndō, -tendere, -tendī, -ten-

beō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
ic, ille
put, capitis, N.
diō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
un), auxilium, -ī, N.
rb), juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum
ns, Helvētiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

her, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, ejus
here, hīc, *adv.*
high, altus, -a, -um
hill, collis, collis, -ium, M.
himself, herself, itself, *intensive*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum; *reflexive* (*gen.*), suī
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
his, her, its, their, *reflexive* suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, ejus, eōrum
honorable, honestus, -a, -um
horse, equus, -ī, M.
hostage, obses, obsidis, M.
hour, hōra, -ae, F.
house, tēctum, -ī, N.
hundred, a hundred, centum
hurry, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

I

I, ego, meī
in, in, *prep. with abl.*
increase, augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī
injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
innocence, innocentia, -ae, F.
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, F.
island, īnsula, -ae, F.
Italy, Italia, -ae, F.

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, N.

K

kill, necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
kind (*noun*), modus, -ī, M.
kind (*adjective*), benignus, -a, -um
king, rēx, rēgis, M.
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, M.
lake, lacus, -ūs, M.
language, lingua, -ae, F.
large, magnus, -a, -um. **so large,** tantus, -a, -um
law, lex, lēgis, F.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
lead out, ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
leader, dux, ducis, M.
leaf, folium, -ī, N.
leave, relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
letter, epistula, -ae, F.
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, F.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
life, vīta, -ae, F.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, F.
live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum
long (*adj.*), longus, -a, -um
long (*adv.*), **a long time,** diū
lose, āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
man, vir, virī, M.; homō, hominis, M.
many, multī, -ae, -a
march, iter, itineris, N.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.
master, dominus, -ī, M.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
mile, mīlle passūs, *pl.*, mīlia passuum
mine, meus, mea, meum
mischance, cāsus, -ūs, M.
money, pecūnia, -ae, F.
moon, lūna, -ae, F.
mother, māter, -tris, F.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, F.
my, meus, mea, meum

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, N.
nation, gēns, gentis, F.
native country, patria, -ae, F.
nature, nātūra, -ae, F.
necessary, necessārius, -a, -um
neither, neuter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* neutrīus
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
never, numquam, *adv.*
new, novus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, -ium, F.
nine, novem
no, nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus
no longer, nōn jam
no one, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī
not, nōn, *adv.*
not yet, nōndum, *adv.*
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*, N.
now, nunc, *adv.*
number, numerus, -ī, M.

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī
ocean, Ōceanus, -ī, M.
often, saepe, *adv.*
on, in, *prep. with abl.*
on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*
once, at once, statim, *adv.*
one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnīus
one . . . another, alius . . . alius. **the one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter
order, jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum
other, alius, -a, -ud

our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum
own, his own, her own, *etc.*, suus, -a, -um

P

part, pars, partis, F.
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
people, populus, -ī, M.
persuade, persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum
picture, pictūra, -ae, F.
place (*noun*), locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, N., *and* locī, -ōrum, M.)
place (*verb*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum
place in command *or* **charge of,** praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
plain, campus, -ī, N.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um
plow, arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
poet, poēta, -ae, M.
point out, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
powerful, potēns, *gen.* potentis
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
prepared, parātus, -a, -um
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, M.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum
province, prōvincia, -ae, F.
purpose, for the purpose of, causā, *with genitive*

Q

quickly, celeriter, *adv.*

R

rampart, vāllum, -ī, N.
receive, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
reject, repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum
relate, nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum
remaining, rest of, reliquus, -a, -um
renew, renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum
residence, domicilium, -ī, N.
resist, resistō, -sistere, -stitī
restrain, retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum
return, redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum
reward, praemium, -ī, N.
right, dexter, -tra, -trum
river, flūmen, flūminis, N.
road, via, -ae, F.; iter, itineris, N.
Roman (*noun*), Rōmānus, -ī, M.; *adj.* Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
rose, rosa, -ae, F.
route, iter, itineris, N.
royal authority, rēgnum, -ī, N.

S

sacred, sacer, sacra, sacrum
safe, tūtus, -a, -um
sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
same, īdem, eadem, idem
satisfied, contentus, -a, -um
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
school, schola, -ae, F.
sea, mare, maris, N.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
self, himself, herself, itself, *intensive*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum; *reflexive*, suī, sibi, *etc.*
senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum

send ahead, praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
separate, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum
seven, septem
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
short, brevis, breve
signal, signum, -ī, N.
similar, similis, -e
sister, soror, sorōris, F.
slave, servus, -ī, M.
small, parvus, -a, -um
so large, so great, tantus, -a, -um
so many, tot, *indeclinable*
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, M.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī
someone, something, aliquis *or* aliquī, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod
sometimes, interdum, *adv.*
son, fīlius, fīliī *or* fīlī, M.
sound, sonus, -ī, M.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, F.
spur, calcar, calcāris, N.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus
state, cīvitās, -tātis, F.
statue, statua, -ae, F.
stone, saxum, -ī, N.
storm, tempestās, -tātis, F.
story, fābula, -ae, F.
street, via, -ae, F.
strong, firmus, -a, -um
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
surround, circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
swift, celer, celeris, celere
sword, gladius, -ī, M.

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
temple, templum, -ī, N.
ten, decem
that, *demonstrative,* ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id
their, *reflexive,* suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive,* eōrum, eārum
then, tum, *adv.*
therefore, igitur, *conj.*
think, arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
three, trēs, tria
through, per, *prep. with acc.*
throw, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum
time, at the same time, simul, *adv.*
tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um
to, toward, ad, *prep. with acc.*
to-day, hodiē, *adv.*
together (with), ūnā, *adv.*
town, oppidum, -ī, N.
townspeople, oppidānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
tree, arbor, arboris, F.
tribute, stīpendium, -ī, N.
true, vērus, -a, -um
trumpet, tuba, -ae, F.
trust, cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum
twenty, vīgintī
two, duo, duae, duo
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, M.

U

unhappy, miser, misera, miserum
unknown, incognitus, -a, -um
unlike, dissimilis, -e
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum

V

valley, vallēs, vallis, F.
various, varius, -a, -um
victor, victor, -ōris, M.

victory, victōria, -ae, F.
villa, vīlla, -ae, F.
village, vīcus, -ī, M.
violence, vīs, (*see sec.* **339**), F.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
wait for, wait, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
wall, mūrus, -ī, M.
wander, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
war, bellum, -ī, N.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
watchfulness, dīligentia, -ae, F.
water, aqua, -ae, F.
wave, flūctus, -ūs, M.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, N.; **weapons,** arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
what, *pronoun,* quid; *adjective,* quī, quae, quod
where, ubi, *adv.*
who, which, what, quī, quae, quod, *rel. pronoun*; quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), *interrog. pron. and adj.*
whole, tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* tōtīus
why, cūr, *adv.*
wide, lātus, -a, -um
wild, ferus, -a, -um
wing (of an army), cornū, -ūs, N.
winter, hiems, hiemis, F.
wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, voluī
with, cum, *prep. with abl.*
withdraw, excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
without, sine, *prep. with abl.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, F.
word, verbum, -ī, N.
work (*noun*), opus, operis, N.
work (*verb*), labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
wound, (*noun*), vulnus, vulneris, N.
wound (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.; **every year,** quotannīs, *adv.*
yesterday, herī, *adv.*
you (*singular*), tū, tuī
young man, juvenis, juvenis
your, *of one person,* tuus, -a, -um; *of more than one,* vester, -tra, -trum

INDEX

(Numbers refer to sections.)

ABLATIVE, general use of, 26.
  form in first declension, 30.
  absolute, 458, 459, 460.
  of accompaniment, 135.
  of agent, 136.
  of cause, 561.
  of degree of difference, 408.
  of description, 432.
  of manner, 570.
  of means, 280.
  of respect, 389.
  of separation, 552.
  of time, 366.
  with *ūtor*, etc., 479.
  without a preposition, 279.
  three contrasted uses of, 281.
ACCENT, VII.
ACCUSATIVE, as direct object, 18.
  of duration of time, 233.
  of extent, 390.
  with prepositions, 162.
ADJECTIVES, defined, (10).
  agreement of, 91.
  adherent, 96.
  predicate, 78.
  position of, 97.
  possessive, 106.
  substantive use of, 239.
  of the first and second declensions, 92, 101.
  of the third declension, 350, 351, 357, 362.
  with genitive in *-īus*, 425, 426.
ADVERBS, defined, (11).
  comparison of, 442, 446.
  formation of, 436.
AGREEMENT, of adjectives, 91.
  of appositives, 113.
  of relative pronouns, 396.
  of participles in indirect discourse, 503.
  of verbs, 68.
aliquis, 569.
ALPHABET, the Latin, I, II, p. xvii.
  modern forms of, 12.
ANALYTIC languages, 17.
APPOSITION, 112, 113.
ARTICLE, not used in Latin, 29.
  in Romance languages, 142.

BASE, of nouns, 33 *a*.

capiō, conjugation of, 302.
CASE, defined, (18), p. xxvii.
  of English pronouns, 13.
  of Latin nouns, 15.
  identical forms of, 30.
  names of, 18.
CASE endings, first declension, 33.
  second declension, 62.
  third declension, 320, 325, 330, 335.
  fourth, 385.
  fifth, 464.
CLAUSE, defined, (27).
  principal, (29).
  subordinate, (30).
coepī, 535.
COMPARATIVES, declension of, 402.
COMPARISON of adjectives, 400, 401, 406, 415, 420, 447.
  of adverbs, 442, 446.
CONJUGATION, defined, 38.
  the four conjugations, how distinguished, 44.
  review of, 307, 308, 313, 314.
  (See PRESENT, IMPERFECT, etc.)
CONJUNCTIONS, defined, (13).
  coördinating, 114.
  subordinating, 115.
CORRELATIVES, 601.
cum, enclitic use of, 379.

DATIVE, with adjectives, 24.
  as indirect object, 22.
  with compounds, 553.
  with special verbs, 530.
  position of, 74.

DECLENSION, defined, 16.
of nouns, how determined, 32, 465.
first, 27, 30, 33, 54.
second, 55, 56, 61, 62, 63, 73.
third, 318, 319, 320, 324, 330, 335.
fourth, 385.
fifth, 464.
(See also ADJECTIVES).
DEMONSTRATIVES, defined, 119.
position of, 121.
DEPONENT verbs, 473, 474, 478, 483, 484, 490.
DERIVATIVES from Latin, importance of, 2, 3.
forms of, 4, 6.
"do" in interrogative sentences, 177.
in negative sentences, 57.
duo, declension of, 576.

eō, conjugation of, 512, 518, 519.
compounds of, 513.
EXPLETIVE "there" not translated, 102.

ferō, conjugation of, 565.
fīō, conjugation of, 588.
FUTURE indicative, 195, 199, 200, 290, 291.
FUTURE perfect, meaning of, 237.
active, 238.
passive, 254.

GENDER of nouns, (15), 53.
in first declension, 54, 108.
in second declension, 56 *a*, 61.
in third declension, 340.
in fourth declension, 385.
in fifth declension, 464 *a*.
GENITIVE, general use of, 18, 19.
position of, 70.
of description, 431.
of possession, 18.
of the whole, 367.
GERUND, 608, 609, 610.
GRAMMAR, elementary principles, (1)—(34), p. xxiii.
GREEK, in ancient and modern times, 11.

hic, declension of, 120.

īdem, 295.
ille, declension of, 140.
IMPERATIVE, 547, 548.
IMPERFECT, meaning of, 169.
tense sign, 171.
active, of regular verbs, 170, 285.
passive, of regular verbs, 181, 182, 285.
of *sum*, 183.
in, use of cases with, 164.
INDICATIVE mood, 39.
INDIRECT discourse, 495, 501, 502.
INDIRECT object, defined, 21.
case of, 22.
represented by a phrase, 23.
INFINITIVE, defined, (24).
present, of regular verbs, 44, 151, 268, 274, 344, 345.
all tenses of, 488, 489.
of deponent verbs, 490.
of *sum*, 84, 504.
complementary, 358.
in indirect discourse, 494.
with *jubeō*, 346.
INFLECTIONAL languages, 17.
INTERROGATIVE pronoun and adjective, declension of, 176.
use of, 175.
INTERROGATIVE sentences in English, 177.
ipse, declension of, 141.
is, declension of, 157.
as an adjective, 157.
as a pronoun, 158.

jubeō, infinitive with, 346.

LATIN in ancient times, 7.
locus, gender of, 184 *a*.

MOOD, imperative, 547.
indicative, 39.

NEGATIVE sentences, 57.
NOUN, defined, (5).
NUMBER, of nouns and pronouns, (16).
of verbs, (22).
NUMERALS, cardinal, 574, 580.
ordinal, 592.
position of, 575.

OBJECT, direct, defined, (3).
case of, 18.
position of, 48.
OBJECT, indirect, defined, 21.
case of, 22.
represented by a phrase, 23.
ORDER of words, 244.

PARTICIPLES, use of, 216.
agreement of, 217.
tenses of, 218.
of deponent verbs, 484.
future active, 262, 264.
past, 219, 220.
present, 451, 452, 453.
PAST perfect, meaning of, 231.
active, 232.
passive, 254.
PERFECT tense, meaning of, 204.
active, 205.
passive, 250.
endings of in the active, 206.
contrasted with imperfect, 211.
PERFECT system of third and fourth conjugation verbs, 275.
PERSON, of nouns and pronouns, (17).
of verbs, (22).
second, singular and plural, 42.
PERSONAL endings of verbs, active, 41, 206, passive, 131.
PHRASE, defined, (28).
prepositional, (28).
with *to* denoting place to which, 25.
with *to*, equivalent to an indirect object, 23.
PLACE from which, 146.
PLACE to which, 163.
plūs, declension of, 421.
POSSESSIVES of the first and second persons, 106, 107.
of the third person, reflexive, 189.
of the third person, not reflexive, 189 *a*.
omission of, 191.
possum, conjugation of, 508, 517, 519.
PREDICATE, defined, (2).
adjective, (26), 78.
noun, (26), 79, 80, 581.
PREPOSITIONS, defined, (12).
with ablative, 34, 35, 36, 37, 146, 147.
with accusative, 162.
PRESENT indicative, active, 40, 152, 269, 274, 301.
passive, 130, 152, 269, 274, 301.
of *sum*, 85.
PRINCIPAL parts of verbs 224, 225, 228, 263.
PROGRESSIVE form of English verbs, 127, 128.
PRONOUN, defined, (7).
antecedent of, (8).
classes of, (9).
interrogative, 176.
personal, 371, 372, 373.
reflexive, 377, 378.
relative, 394, 395.
PRONUNCIATION:
Roman method, III-V.
English method, X-XV.

-que, use of, 286.
QUESTIONS with *-ne* and *nōnne*, 593.
quīdam, 523.
quisque, 534.

ROMANCE languages, 8, 9, 10.

SEMI-DEPONENT verbs, 559, 560.
SENTENCE, complex, (32).
compound, (33).
simple, (31).
STEM of verbs, present, 47.
perfect, 210.
participial, 226.
use of, 227.
SUBJECT defined, (1).
case of, 18.
supplied with verbs, 43, 67.
SUBSTANTIVE use of adjectives, 239.
sum, conjugation of, 84, 85, 200, 213.
position of, 86.
SUPERLATIVE, translation of, 416.
suus, use of, 189.
translation of, 189 *a*, *b*.
SYLLABLES, VI, VII.
SYNONYMS, 466.
SYNOPSIS of verbs, 258.

TENSE, defined, (20).
in English and in Latin, 168.
trēs, declension of, 576.
tuus and *vester*, 107.

VERB, defined, (6).
agreement of, 68.
position of, 69.
vir, declension of, 73.
vīs, declension of, 339.
VOCABULARY, sources of English,
VOCATIVE, use of, 539.
form of, 540.
position of, 543.
of adjectives, 541.
of *meus*, 542.
VOICE, (21), 129.
volō, conjugation of, 597.